FM 3-39
MILITARY POLICE OPERATIONS

AUGUST 2013

HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

This publication is available at Army Knowledge Online (https://armypubs.us.army.mil/doctrine/index.html). To receive publishing updates, please subscribe at http://www.apd.army.mil/AdminPubs/new_subscribe.asp.

Field Manual
No. 3-39

Military Police Operations

Contents

Distribution Restriction: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

*This publication supersedes FM 3-39, 16 February 2010.

Figures

Tables

Preface

Field Manual (FM) 3-39 describes the operational doctrine of the Military Police Corps Regiment. The manual is linked to joint and Army doctrine to ensure that it is useful for joint and Army. Other military police FMs will be based on the foundations established in this manual and will be synchronized with their respective joint and Army publications.

To comprehend the doctrine contained in this manual, readers must first understand the nature of unified land operations as described in Army Doctrine Publication (ADP) 3-0 and Army Doctrine Reference Publication (ADRP) 3-0. Readers of this manual must also fully understand the fundamentals of the operations process found in ADP 5-0 and ADRP 5-0, the principles of mission command as described in ADP 6-0 and ADRP 6-0, and the protection principles discussed in ADP 3-37 and ADRP 3-37.

The principal audience for this manual is all commanders and staff elements at all echelons and military police personnel who are tasked with planning, directing, and executing military police missions. Training developers and educators throughout the Army will also use this manual.

Commanders, staffs, and subordinates will ensure that their decisions and actions comply with applicable U.S., international, and (in some cases) host nation laws and regulations. Commanders at all levels will ensure that Soldiers operate according to the law of war and the rules of engagement (see FM 27-10).

FM 3-39 uses joint terms where applicable. Selected joint and Army terms and definitions appear in the glossary and the text. Terms for which this manual is the proponent (the authority) are marked with an asterisk (*) in the glossary. Definitions for which this manual is the proponent publication are boldfaced in the text. For other definitions shown in the text, the term is italicized and the number of the proponent publication follows the definition.

FM 3-39 applies to the Active Army, Army National Guard/Army National Guard of the United States, and U.S. Army Reserve unless otherwise stated.

The proponent for this manual is the U.S. Army Maneuver Support Center of Excellence (MSCoE), and the preparing agency is the U.S. Army Military Police School (USAMPS). Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 *(Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms)* to Commandant, USAMPS, ATTN: ATZT-CDC, 14000 MSCoE Loop, Suite 270, Fort Leonard Wood, Missouri 65473-8929, e-mail to <usarmy.leonardwood.mscoe.mbx.cdidcodddmpdoc@mail.mil>, or submit an electronic DA Form 2028.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

Introduction

The foundations of military police operations are based on the successful employment of military police Soldiers, past and present. This manual describes the military police support provided to Army forces that are conducting unified land operations within the framework of joint operations and increases the emphasis on simultaneous offensive, defensive, and stability tasks and the critical discussion of defense support of civil authorities (DSCA).

Military police enable commanders to achieve their objectives by providing a unique set of capabilities that support joint functions and the Army warfighting functions through the military police disciplines of police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support. This manual also addresses the military police role within multinational operations that are under potential multinational or interagency leadership and within diverse command relationships.

This manual builds on the collective knowledge and wisdom that is gained through recent operations, numerous lessons learned, and doctrine revisions, throughout the Army. It is rooted in time-tested principles and fundamentals, while accommodating new technologies and organizational changes.

The following are brief chapter summaries:

- **Chapter 1.** Chapter 1 addresses the conceptual frameworks that leaders will use to understand the operational environment. Chapter 1 also provides a conceptual view of the operational environment through a military police perspective and introduces the military police competencies (soldiering, policing, investigations, and corrections) and disciplines (police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support).
- **Chapter 2.** Chapter 2 describes the military police organizations, the capabilities that military police organizations have available to the commander, and the framework for generating and organizing these capabilities.
- **Chapter 3.** Chapter 3 describes the military police disciplines and military police technical capabilities and tactical tasks that enable the elements of combat power and support the generating force and the operational Army across the range of military operations.
- **Chapter 4.** Chapter 4 describes how military police support Army operations by integrating military police disciplines. These disciplines are applied through the elements of combat power to support combined arms operations.
- **Chapter 5.** Chapter 5 identifies planning responsibilities, integration, and processes for military police units and planners in non-military police units and continues in that context by discussing the preparation, execution, and continuous assessment of military police operations.
- **Chapter 6.** Chapter 6 focuses on sustainment support for military police capabilities and highlights the sustainment considerations that will affect military police operations.
- **Chapter 7.** Chapter 7 discusses the specific investigative, police intelligence, and forensic capabilities resident within the U.S. Army Criminal Investigation Command (USACIDC) structure and available for support to the range of military operations.
- **Chapter 8.** Chapter 8 describes the foundations necessary for efficient military police corrections operations and discusses the U.S. Army Corrections Command (ACC) technical oversight of military occupational specialty 31E corrections and detention specialists and their integration into combined arms applications and detention operations at every echelon.

The foundations of military police operations that are provided in this manual, with related military police doctrine, will support the actions and decisions of commanders at all levels. This manual is not meant to be a substitute for thought and initiative among military police leaders and Soldiers. No matter how robust the doctrine or how advanced the military police capabilities and systems, it is the military police Soldier who

must understand the operational environment, recognize shortfalls, and use professional judgment to adapt to the situation on the ground. It is the adaptable and professional military police Soldiers of the Military Police Corps Regiment who are most important to our future and who must successfully and ethically perform their duty to accomplish the mission—with or without technological assistance.

Based on current doctrinal changes, certain terms for which FM 3-39 is the proponent have been added, rescinded, or modified for the purposes of this manual (see introductory table-1 and introductory table-2). The glossary contains acronyms and defined terms.

Introductory table-1. Rescinded Army terms

Term	Remarks
internment	rescinded
law and order	rescinded
maneuver mobility support	rescinded

Introductory table-2. Modified Army term

Term	Remarks
traffic control post	modified definition
holding area	retained based on common English usage, but no longer formally defined
defile	retained based on common English usage, but no longer formally defined
law enforcement	retained based on common English usage, but no longer formally defined
police intelligence operations	retained based on common English usage, but no longer formally defined
straggler control	retained based on common English usage, but no longer formally defined

Chapter 1

Operational Environment

This chapter addresses the conceptual frameworks that leaders use to understand the operational environment. This chapter provides a conceptual view of the operational environment through a military police perspective. It provides the basis for relevant military police operations that support unified land operations in an operational environment that is uncertain and often changes rapidly. This chapter also provides linkage to joint interagency considerations and adds a discussion of military police aspects of the operational environment that span the range of military operations. Combined arms and the joint nature of land operations involve the interaction and mutual support of different arms and Services that add to the complexity of land operations. Uncertainty and chaos characterize operations on land. This uncertainty is increased by the impact of hybrid, criminal, and terrorist threats that operate in and transit the area of operations and by the effects of damaged infrastructure. Technology, intelligence, and the operations structure can reduce uncertainty. It is key to note that regardless of the effort allocated to intelligence, commanders still have to make prudent and ethical decisions based on information that may be incomplete, inaccurate, or contradictory. An understanding of the operational environment underpins the commander's ability to make these decisions. The *operational environment* is a composite of the conditions, circumstances, and influences that affect the employment of military capabilities and bear on the decisions of the commander. (JP 3-0) The operational environment encompasses physical areas and factors (air, land, maritime, and space domains) and the information environment, which includes cyberspace; adversarial, friendly, and neutral forces; and other variables that may be relevant to a specific operation. Understanding the operational environment is essential to the successful execution of operations. To gain a broad understanding of these influences, commanders normally consult with specialists in each area. Military police are specialists that add breadth and depth to the understanding of the operational environment. (See ADP 3-0 and ADRP 3-0 for additional information on the operational environment.)

MILITARY POLICE VIEW

1-1. The competencies of the Military Police Corps Regiment are soldiering, policing, investigations, and corrections. These competencies serve as the foundation for the military police profession within the Army and represent the strengths and unique capabilities of the military police corps. The military police competencies are developed through professional training, education, and experiential learning. These competencies define military police as professionals. Military Police are Soldiers first, and they are disciplined, physically and mentally tough, trained, and proficient in combat tasks and battle drills. Military police support commanders by policing, safeguarding communities, maintaining good order and discipline, reducing crime, protecting individual rights and liberties, and enabling the rule of law. Military police investigations expertise is employed in many forms—from traffic accidents and common investigations to investigations across the range of military operations. Corrections experience combined with core soldiering and interpersonal communication skills provides military police with the technical ability to shelter, sustain, guard, protect, and account for populations (detainees or U.S. military prisoners).

1-2.   Military police demonstrate their competencies through the performance of unique technical capabilities and tactical tasks. These technical capabilities and tactical tasks combine to form the military police disciplines (police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support), which enable the elements of combat power, support the generating force and operational Army across the range of military operations. (See figure 1-1.)
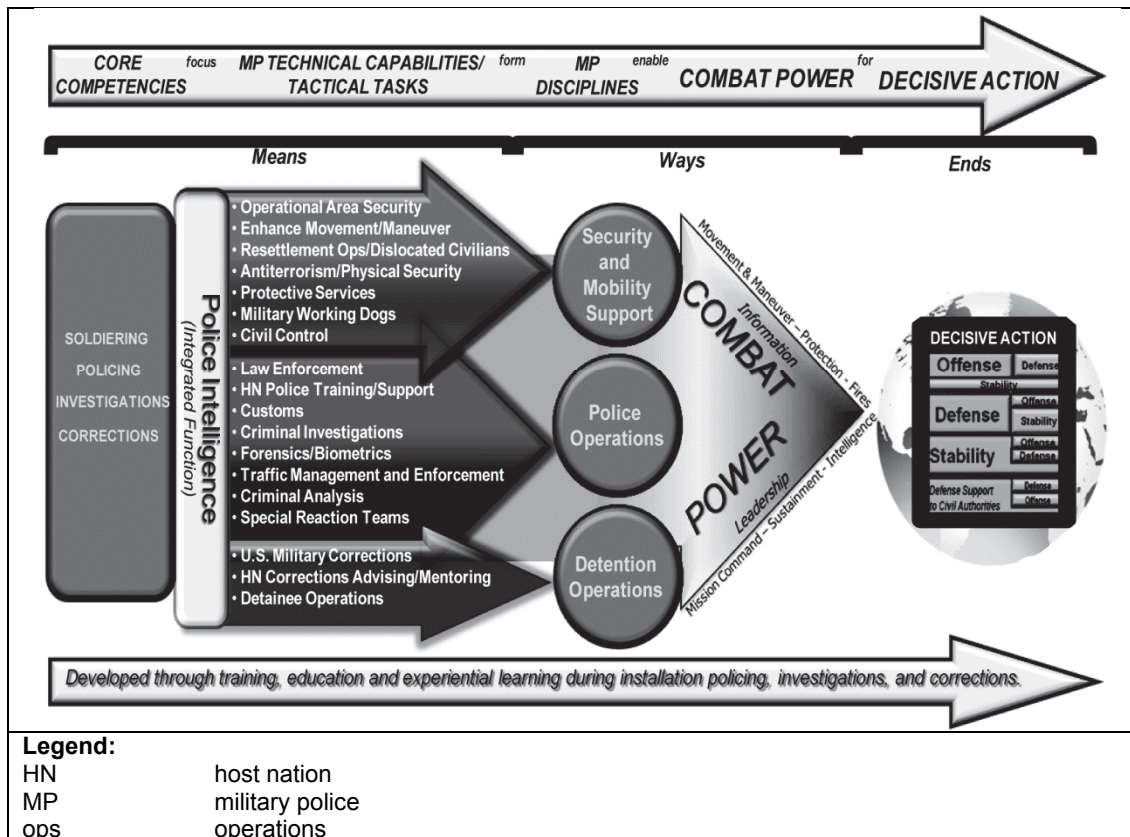
Figure 1-1. Military police support to decisive action

1-3.   Military police disciplines are interdependent areas of expertise within the Military Police Corps Regiment. Military police operations are viewed through a policing and corrections lens that focuses efforts on civil order maintenance, threat mitigation, and personnel and asset protection, regardless of the operational environment. The execution of military police operations and the manner in which they are conducted are all policing in nature. Military police operate in support of commanders to establish and maintain an orderly environment in which commanders and their forces can operate with minimal threat interference. This is true whether conducting operations abroad or at home.

1-4.   At home stations, military police perform their technical capabilities to maintain safe and secure environments that enable commanders to protect and generate combat power during training, deployment, and redeployment tasks that are associated with the Army force generation requirements that are in support of unified land operations. Military police also provide a safe and secure environment for Army assets and personnel who reside or work on U.S. bases.

1-5.   The ultimate goal is to maintain order while protecting personnel and assets. The military police view shares a common general understanding of the operational environment, while adding a degree of focus on the aspects that are necessary to maintain order and enforce laws. Guided by the common understanding and complemented by a policing mind-set, the military police approach seeks to identify potential challenges and opportunities that are associated with the operational and mission variables of the operational environment.

OPERATIONAL VARIABLES

1-6.   The operational environment is described in the operational variables of political, military, economic, social, information, infrastructure, physical environment, and time (PMESII-PT). Operational variables describe not only the military aspects of an operational environment, but also the influence of the population. The following are examples of a military police approach to the operational environment:

- **Political.** Understanding the cultural, social, and political power relationships within an area of operations will help commanders recognize key actors, visualize their explicit and implicit aims, and identify their capabilities to achieve their goals. Military police assess challenges that are associated with governance as they pertain to the transition of political power, legitimacy, the rule of law, social justice, and punishment. They assess indigenous police capability and capacity and their relationship to local and regional political power brokers. Military police identify and track election cycles to help protect applicable democratic processes and determine events that may expose friendly forces and host nation personnel to unlawful or threatening activities that may affect the transition of power. They examine the effect of laws, agreements, and mandates that might influence military police capabilities. These laws, agreements, and mandates may involve locals, belligerents, or allies. Military police leaders must understand laws, policies, and military or political directives that guide their relationship with contract companies, personnel, and commercial operations in the area of operations and must understand how they can affect law, regulation, and agreement enforcement.

- **Military.** The military variable explores the military capabilities of relevant actors in a given operational environment. Military police focus on conventional and unconventional threat capabilities that can attack high-risk personnel, critical nodes, and other facilities that are essential to friendly operations. The military variable also addresses risk mitigation and how to protect critical assets. Military police plan to engage unified-action partners early in the operation to determine the best use of commensurate assets and capabilities in a joint, interagency, and multinational context. Military police capabilities are typically a significant and relevant component within the military variable. (Chapter 2 provides additional discussion of military police capabilities, including Army, joint, interagency, and multinational capabilities.) Recent significant changes that impact the military variable include—
    - A complex, noncontiguous battlefield.
    - A threat scenario in which potential adversaries are not readily identifiable.
    - Simultaneous, geographically dispersed operations that result in extremely long and potentially unsecured lines of communication.
    - Increased coordination of organizations and functions to achieve appreciable gains.
    - The significance of long-term detainee operations.
    - The capabilities and limitations of multinational operations.
    - A significant degree of interaction with unified-action partners.
    - The creation of multifunctional Army units.

- **Economic.** The economic variable encompasses individual behaviors and aggregate phenomena that are related to the production, distribution, and consumption of resources. Military police identify predictable events and activities in the local and regional business cycles (harvests, holidays) that can lead to identifiable commodity and currency movement. These activities can be influenced or manipulated to control populations or create wealth for illicit, unlawful, or threat purposes. Military police conduct police engagement operations to collect police information that, in turn, protects essential economic activities or areas. Police information obtained through police engagement may also enable the protection of assessment teams as they assess economic indicators in a specific area of operations. Military police also examine economic influences that affect hiring, training, equipping, and sustaining civilian police and corrections agencies that are required to support the rule of law.

- **Social.** The social variable describes the cultural, religious, ethnic, and social elements within an operational environment. Military police identify and analyze enforcement gaps that can create crime-conducive conditions with the potential of affecting military operations or political success. Education cycles, school vacations, and ethnic and religious observances are predictable

events and activities in the social domain that lead to fluctuations in social activity and stress enforcement mechanisms in an area. Military police examine the relationship between the population and the police and identify hybrid, criminal, terrorist threats, and patterns within a society.

- **Information.** This variable describes the nature, scope, characteristics, and effects of individuals, organizations, and systems that collect, process, disseminate, or act on information. Military police identify and track predictable news and media cycles for their relationship to threat or criminal activity in an area of operations and remain cognizant of internet media that may incite unrest or potential flash points. They conduct police engagement to deliver messages and support informational themes that are consistent with friendly military goals and actions. Deliberate and frequent interaction with the population allows military police to quickly gather large quantities of information that can support situational understanding, protection efforts, and the police activities.

- **Infrastructure.** Infrastructure comprises the basic facilities, services, and installations that are needed for the functioning of a community or society. The military police assessment identifies the existence or shortfalls of basic infrastructure to support civilian or military policing and corrections institution efforts, such as police stations and jails. It might also address the facility requirements that are needed to support detention or resettlement operations in the area of operations. Military police assess the quality and trafficability of roadway infrastructure that is necessary to support tactical movements along main and alternate supply routes or dislocated civilian flow along designated tertiary routes without interfering with operations. They track and monitor civilian traffic patterns to identify predictable criminal or threat movement patterns.

- **Physical environment.** The defining physical environment factors are urban settings (supersurface, surface, and subsurface features), other complex terrain, weather, topography, hydrology, and environmental conditions. The military police assessment provides additional information on how the physical environment, especially weather, might impact the execution of military police operations. It might also address environmental factors as they relate to the protection of high-risk targets and personnel.

- **Time.** The variable of time influences military operations within an operational environment in terms of the decision cycles, operational tempo, and planning horizons. The military police assessment includes the examination of periodic and predictable cycles of activity that can reveal trends, patterns, and associations that are necessary for predictive analysis and focused policing models and strategies. As a resource, time is one common variable in synchronizing operations. Military police examine each particular phase of an operation to anticipate when and where a particular military police capability will be most needed. Traffic circulation enforcement, control plans, and movement tables often require strict adherence to deliberate timelines.

1-7. Military police review the operational environment using operational variables to add to the shared common understanding by identifying potential challenges to, and opportunities within, the operation before and during mission execution. The resulting understanding of the operational environment and the military police view of the operational environment is not intended to be limited to considerations within the operational environment that may result in military police missions. However, the military police view of the operational environment is analyzed across the military police disciplines and linked to the common overall understanding through the warfighting functions.

1-8. An analysis of the operational environment, in terms of operational variables, provides relevant information that commanders and staffs use to improve situational understanding. The examples above illustrate the added focus that is sought within each of the operational variables by the military police view of the operational environment. The added technical view contributes relevant information to the shared common understanding of the operational environment for a particular operation. Additional mission analysis of the operational variables will support information and planning requirements for mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). (Chapter 5 provides a complete discussion of analysis using the mission variables in terms of planning military police operations.)

POLICING PRINCIPLES

1-9.   The police operations discipline and policing methodologies shape the military police approach to the operational environment and provide the foundation upon which military police operations are conducted. Military police operations are guided by six principles. These principles are not a rigid checklist; however, they represent dominant characteristics of police activities that are generally found in societies which are influenced by western culture. Military police Soldiers and leaders use these principles to develop operational concepts and guide the employment of police formations as they shape the operational environment. The military police principles are—

- Prevention.
- Public support.
- Restraint.
- Legitimacy.
- Transparency.
- Assessment.

PREVENTION

1-10. Military police conduct policing operations in a manner that emphasizes proactive actions to prevent and deter crime and stop the disruption of civil order. The objective is to be proactive and to prevent crime and potential disruptions to military operations that threaten lines of operation. Fundamental to this approach is the identification of criminal activity and crime-conducive conditions from which trends, patterns, or associations emerge and for which policing strategies are developed. Predictive analysis, performed formally or informally, is essential to prevention strategies and programs. Military police often use proven police strategies, models, and surveys to focus the collection of police information through police activities. Proactive policing activities are enabled through the deliberate application of integrated police intelligence activities by military police and USACIDC elements. If prevention efforts fail, military police are trained for rapid response to resolve problems resulting from incidents occurring within their area of operations or sphere of influence.

PUBLIC SUPPORT

1-11. Police forces should not be detached from the public that they are policing, as successful police forces are nested with the public that they are charged to protect. Police activities and strategies are generally enhanced through the efforts of an involved citizenry that is supportive of the police. In many societies, the public will support police efforts that provide a security, safety, or service benefit to the community if the police force is trustworthy or reasonable. Military police are organized and employed in a manner that facilitates building public support through frequent and continuous interaction with a population. Military police can successfully garner public support as they collect and disseminate information to a community or population through Soldier and leader engagement. Police engagement provides a connection to the public and other police entities. This is conducted in traditional law enforcement activities and police and protection activities within an operational environment.

RESTRAINT

1-12. Lethal capability often differentiates police forces from security, paramilitary, or conventional military forces. The perceived threat of significant violence that is associated with conventional military forces can often prevent conflict, but may also result in tensions in a civilian community. These tensions may lead to disorder and confrontation. Introducing police forces with the appropriate level of lethality often signals a return to normalcy and may reduce community tensions. These forces present a less-threatening force signature that may be more acceptable to the local inhabitants.

1-13. Police activities often complement other graduated-response mechanisms that are intended to reduce violence and disorder within an area by mitigating the unnecessary escalation of force. Military police and other forces that are engaged in police activities among local populations must be capable of exercising restraint in the application of force to compel compliance from civilians and others. Military police are

specifically trained to engage the public and the community within established rules for the use of force and rules of engagement, applying only the required level of force to accomplish their mission. The prudent and measured application of force is often critical to gaining and maintaining public support. Excessive force can alienate the population, undermine police efforts, and pose a threat to friendly forces.

LEGITIMACY

1-14. Police authority is generally accepted as legitimate when it is sanctioned by competent authority and when it applies laws or mandates in a fair and impartial manner. This includes maintaining consistency in applying police activities within a community or across an area of operations. Police actions that appear to be based on ethnic, religious, personal, or political bias or affiliation generally lack legitimacy, lose public support, and often lead to confrontation or reprisal. Military police and other police personnel maintain a professional bearing and deal with the public in a firm and impartial manner. Law enforcement activities or programs that lead to justice and the effective resolution of problems, conditions, or incidents within the area of operations ensure a professional police image and are critical to maintaining legitimacy in the eyes of the public and other police organizations. Through professional conduct, military police and security forces build trust within the population.

TRANSPARENCY

1-15. Policies, established principles, leadership intent, and corrective actions that affect police and detention operations should be open and accessible. This does not mean allowing public access to police files and information regarding ongoing investigations; rather, transparency ensures that personnel, policies, and procedural aspects of police organizations are known and reasonably accessible to the public. This allows for public awareness, scrutiny, and accountability. Military police and USACIDC elements who are conducting police and detention operations must always operate in a manner that can withstand public scrutiny. Leaders continuously balance the need for transparency with the operational security requirements necessary for protection.

ASSESSMENT

1-16. Police activities and operations are continually assessed through *cause and effect* and *cost versus benefit*. Using trend, pattern, and association data, police personnel focus police efforts to develop or adjust police strategies, identify where criminals or crime-conducive conditions exist, and predict where problems may emerge. Military police and USACIDC elements continuously assess their activities in support of establishing order and determining the progress measured against established measures of effectiveness. This allows leaders to adjust the application police resource. These assessments develop awareness and intuitive judgment in police personnel and organizations and identify the subtle changes or variations in societal behavior toward disorder or changes that may signal a deteriorating security environment.

CAPABILITIES ACROSS THE RANGE OF MILITARY OPERATIONS

1-17. The United States employs joint military capabilities in operations at home and abroad in support of national security goals. These operations vary in size, purpose, and combat intensity within the range of military operations that extend from military engagement, security cooperation, and deterrence activities to crisis response, limited contingency operations, and major operations. The nature of today's operational environment is such that the U.S. military will often be engaged in several types of joint operations that occur simultaneously across the range of military operations. The range of military operations is a scale of graduated violence that ranges from stable peace to major operations and campaigns. The conflict levels and corresponding politically motivated violence may vary in different areas of the world and in-theater. It is common to conduct operations at different points along the range simultaneously in-theater or even within an area of operations.

1-18. The military police view of the operational environment is not limited to one point on the range of military operations. Military police share a general understanding of the operational environment with a heightened degree of focus on conducting police operations, maintaining order, and enforcing laws that enable them to identify and react to potential challenges and opportunities. The military police ability of

measuring increasing tensions in an operational environment and countering the effects of those tensions with a graduated and appropriate response makes them a useful asset for identifying indicators of a changing or transitioning environment. The demand for military police capabilities remains high across the entire range of military operations, even though the violence level varies significantly from stable peace to general war. Military police forces will remain in high demand across the range of military operations because of their agility, flexibility, and ability to quickly apply necessary capabilities anywhere along the spectrum.

1-19. At one end of the range is stable peace, an ideal situation characterized by relative order and little or no violence. Peaceful interaction may include friendly competition, cooperation, and assistance. Military police activities may include police activities (to include training host nation police), host nation corrections training and support activities, the protection of critical personnel and facilities, and assistance to dislocated civilians. Military engagement, security cooperation, and deterrence activities sometimes require large numbers of military forces. Forces performing these operations will need infrastructure, facilities, lines of communication, and base camps to support their sustainment. Military police will be engaged in the protection of Soldiers and facilities across the area of operations. Where one or more factions threaten or use violence to achieve their objectives, stable peace may transition into unstable peace. In some cases, external powers may intervene to limit conflict. Unstable peace may also result when violence levels decrease after conflict. Preventing a return to violence may require peace operations. Peace operations may be necessary when stable peace is not immediately achievable. At those times, a goal of conflict termination can establish conditions in which peace operations and diplomacy may prevent conflict from recurring. (See JP 3-07.3 for information on peace operations.) This allows the other instruments of national power to work toward stable peace. Military police may support these efforts by conducting police operations, detention operations, or other technical support as required.

1-20. Continuing along the range, the next category is insurgency (may include the widespread use of terrorist tactics). *Insurgency* is defined as the organized use of subversion and violence by a group or movement that seeks to overthrow or force change of a governing authority. Insurgency can also refer to the group itself. (JP 3-24) Insurgency is an occurrence of ongoing conflict that involves significant intra- or interstate violence, but short of large-scale operations by conventional forces. Most common military operations conducted here are counterinsurgency or support to insurgencies (typically conducted by special operations forces and termed *unconventional warfare*). Military police support counterinsurgency operations along the range of military operations predominantly through police operations and detention operations that support civil control efforts, enhance the commander's freedom of action by enabling freedom of movement, provide full-dimensional protection in designated areas, conduct detainee operations, and support reconciliation efforts. Police information networks are established through police engagement by providing police information for the conduct of police intelligence operations that enables focused police efforts. Military police can help control, limit, or restrict the freedom of movement of insurgents in specific areas, while supporting host nation police and security strategies. They identify crime-conducive conditions that can be exploited by insurgents, terrorists, or criminals.

1-21. In general war, conventional and unconventional military forces conduct operations to achieve political goals. Major combat aims to defeat or severely limit the armed forces of an enemy and eliminate the military threat. Commanders seek to reduce the violence level to fewer, uncoordinated actions and decrease the number of affected parties. This is achieved in synchronization with combat operations by shaping the operational environment through the civil security restoration and civil control in areas controlled by friendly forces to prepare for postconflict operations. If successful, these actions transition the violence level along the range of military operations toward stable peace. Major combat operations are typically accompanied by simultaneous unconventional efforts.

1-22. Major operations, crisis response, and contingency operations have the potential for close combat. These operations require integrating military police and other enablers to ensure the movement and maneuver of friendly forces, while denying freedom of action to adversaries. A military police view also includes identifying and meeting the challenges associated with overall police operations; the protection of high-risk personnel, facilities, assets, and dislocated civilians; detention; and other aspects not typically associated with close combat.

1-23. Military police must understand the complex environments in which they will be operating and the changing nature of warfare as it transitions along the range of military operations. At every level, military police use tools and systems to analyze and examine the operational environment, including the operational and mission variables and analysis of civil considerations categorized by area, structures, capabilities, organizations, people, and events. Military police also employ an analytical assessment tool that is focused on policing considerations and impacts. This tool considers systems and infrastructure that pertains to police and prison structures, organized criminal networks, legal systems, investigations and interviews, crime-conducive conditions, and enforcement gaps and mechanisms (POLICE). They must ensure that their functional efforts are consistent, nested, and conducted within a shared framework as they provide support across the range of military of operations. Military police are organized, equipped, and trained to conduct operations at any point along the range of military operations. Their mix of lethal and nonlethal capabilities makes them relevant anywhere a flexible force option is required.

SUPPORT SPANNING THE LEVELS OF WAR

1-24. The levels of war are doctrinal perspectives that clarify the relationship between strategic objectives (ends), operational approaches (ways), and tactical actions (means). No finite limits or boundaries exist between the levels of war; they correlate to specific levels of responsibility and planning that help to organize thought and approaches to a problem. The challenges of planning, preparing, executing, and continuously assessing operations within diverse theaters are numerous and varied. Military police commanders and staffs must remain involved in the operations process at each level of war—strategic, operational, and tactical. Military police leaders identify challenges and opportunities that equip the staff with relevant information to form a more comprehensive understanding that leads to the most effective use of military police assets and capabilities in mission execution. Military police staff members must ensure that they are an integral part of the planning process at all levels. The following paragraphs briefly describe some of the military police considerations at each level of war.

1-25. Military police activities at the strategic level include force planning, military police-related policy and doctrine development, and execution operations that primarily focus on the means and capabilities to generate, employ, sustain, and recover military police forces. Additionally, protection tasks; host nation police training and support and development; detention, and resettlement operations place a heavy demand on military police planning requirements. Military police staff and commanders at the strategic level advise on—

- Detainee and dislocated civilian missions.
- Protection of strategic-level infrastructure, to include seaports of debarkation and aerial ports of debarkation.
- Line-of-communication security.
- Military police force generation priorities.
- Joint targeting against criminal actors.
- Foreign humanitarian assistance.
- Service policing interoperability.
- Rules of engagement and rules for the use of force.
- The rule of law.
- Engagement of joint, interagency, intergovernmental, and multinational law enforcement agencies to identify, monitor, and defeat criminal networks.
- Employment of biometric and forensic capabilities.
- Host nation police training and support.
- Synchronization and integration of operational efforts with host nation policing and corrections capabilities.
- Protection or security of natural resources, historic or holy sites, economic centers, and weapons stockpiles.

1-26. Military police activities at the operational level focus on the impact of geography and force projection infrastructure on the commander's operational design. Military police planners must determine

the basic, yet broad, mobilization, deployment, employment, and sustaining requirements of the geographic combatant commander's concept of operations. Joint force commander military police planners also need to understand the capabilities and limitations of the military police of joint and multinational forces. Many of the military police activities that are conducted for strategic operations are also performed at the operational level. At the operational level, military police—

- Prioritize limited assets and mitigate risks.
- Conduct operational assessments and police intelligence operations, working with intelligence officers to analyze the criminal and hybrid threat.
- Plan for the protection of high-risk personnel and facilities.
- Prepare for the employment of lethal and nonlethal military police capabilities, anticipate other requirements, and request capabilities to meet them.
- Develop products and services and make recommendations on force protection and the rule of law.
- Operate expeditionary forensics teams and laboratories to establish criminal and hybrid threat identities and build host nation capacity and capability.

1-27. As the link to tactical military police integration, operational planning ensures that adequate military police capabilities are provided to ensure mission success at each phase of the tactical operation. Military police activities at the tactical level focus on support to the ordered arrangement and maneuver of combat elements. Military police considerations at the tactical level must include their relationship to each other and to the enemy, critical priority tasks required to achieve combat objectives, unit mobility, and the ability to execute mutual support with maneuver elements. While tactical planning may be conducted within each of the Services, in the context of military police operations, this translates to a primary focus on military police disciplines (see chapter 3) and planning done within tactical organizations. Operational planners set the conditions for success at the tactical level by anticipating requirements and ensuring that capabilities are available. Military police tactical planning is typically focused on support to designated critical priority tasks, to include police operations tasks in support of civil security and civil control efforts, detention tasks which ensure that detainees do not interfere with combat operations, and security and mobility support task that enable critical protection and mobility priorities. Military police tactical planners use the military police assets that are provided by operational planners to support the tactical mission tasks assigned to the combat maneuver units that they support. With military police support, the subordinate joint force commander ensures that military police capabilities are effectively integrated into the tactical operation order and that military police are leveraged to perform identified priority tasks.

1-28. Tactical tasks are complex, and planning must consider symmetric and asymmetric threat capabilities. Support to policing and a corrections institution (which may include training, development, or mentorship) is a critical capability to enable the maneuver commander at the tactical level during stability operations. Military police facilitate the ability to discern and identify patterns, plan specific strategies based on the criminal threat, and provide specific threat information in the form of police intelligence. The proliferation of mines and improvised explosive devices requires military police security elements to continuously develop new procedures to counter the threat. The tactical integration of newly developed technology; engineer; explosive ordnance disposal; and chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) capabilities becomes part of an increasing requirement to remain adaptive.

1-29. The military police approach to the operational environment facilitates the synchronization of military police operations in support of combined arms through the framework of the warfighting functions. The understanding of the operational environment is nested within a holistic Army understanding of the operational environment. (Chapter 4 includes a detailed discussion of military police support to combined arms and the linkages to the warfighting functions.) While there are significant linkages to each of the warfighting functions, planning support at the strategic to operational level is focused primarily within the protection, movement and maneuver, and intelligence functions. At the operational to tactical level, planning support focuses primarily on the protection, movement and maneuver, intelligence, and mission command functions. While the primary focus and staff organization for military police considerations vary among levels of war, the military police Soldier remains central to the integration of policing activities and shaping of the operational environment.

ESCALATION OF FORCE

1-30. Soldiers are regularly placed in situations where they must balance protection requirements and the need for restraint in dealing with the population, especially during stability tasks. Escalation-of-force incidents in which unwarranted, or perceived unwarranted, lethal action is used can negatively affect short- and long-term military objectives and impede the ability to foster productive partnerships with the local population. These negative impacts can adversely affect or halt progress in establishing and maintaining civil security, civil control, and a sense of normalcy. The failure to act when lethal force is warranted may lead to friendly casualties. Demonstrating appropriate escalation-of-force procedures begins with a mind-set that balances the use of nonlethal methods and systems with the necessary application of lethal force.

1-31. Military police Soldiers are trained on graduated-response measures when dealing with the public during potentially volatile situations. This training includes integration of nonlethal and lethal tactics, techniques, procedures, and equipment. It is imperative that military police and Soldiers, regardless of military occupational specialty, understand and correctly apply escalation-of-force procedures. Escalation-of-force procedures enable alternatives to the use of lethal force.

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

1-32. *Rules of engagement* are directives issued by competent military authority that delineate the circumstances and limitations under which U.S. forces will initiate and/or continue combat engagement with other forces encountered. (JP 1-04) Rules of engagement are derived from the standing rules of engagement that were published by the Joint Chiefs of Staff and are based on international law and moral principles. The rules of engagement are specific to the decisive action conducted outside the United States and its territories. The standing rules of engagement and rules of engagement differ from the standing rules for the use of force and rules for the use of force. The standing rules of engagement and rules of engagement are, by nature, permissive measures that are intended to allow for the maximum use of destructive combat power that is appropriate for the mission. Generally, the standing rules of engagement and rules of engagement are implemented in situations where host nation law enforcement and civil authorities do not exist, are not functional, or are not accepting of a U.S. presence. In contrast, the standing rules for the use of force and rules for the use of force are restrictive measures that are intended to allow only the minimum force necessary to accomplish the mission. The standing rules for the use of force and rules for the use of force are generally implemented in situations where there is a functional civil government capable of enforcing the rule of law (such as DSCA).

1-33. The *escalation of force* is the sequential actions that begin with nonlethal force measures (visual signals) (flags, spotlights, lasers, pyrotechnics) and may graduate to lethal measures (direct action) (warning, disabling, deadly shots) to defeat a threat and protect the force. The escalation of force does not replace the rules of engagement; escalation-of-force measures complement and are implemented within the rules of engagement. While the conditions and environment under which the escalation of force is implemented, the rules of engagement differ from graduated-response applications within the law enforcement environment under the rules for use of force; however, they are similar in concept. This similarity gives military police an advantage in understanding and implementing escalation-of-force directives.

1-34. The presence of perceived hostile action or demonstrated hostile intent creates the necessity to respond to that threat. The guidelines for proportionality require the response to be reasonable in intensity, duration, and magnitude, based on the totality of circumstances. Lethal force cannot be the default option. Other options, including military, nonlethal weapons and capabilities, must be available and used when appropriate. Escalation-of-force guidelines direct the application of lower levels of force when they can achieve the desired effects without endangering the lives of Soldiers or innocent personnel. Escalation-of-force procedures may be applied at static locations (such as checkpoints and entry control points) or while moving and engaging with populations and potential threats mounted or dismounted. Escalation-of-force procedures do not limit the right of self-defense, including the use of deadly force when such force is necessary to defend against a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent. Commanders must ensure that personnel are properly trained in escalation-of-force procedures and scenarios and in methods of shaping the environment to gain time and space when applicable and to reduce the requirement for split-second, life-or-death decisions.

1-35. The application of escalation-of-force criteria is critical across the range of military operations, but probably more so during stability tasks. The ability to leverage well-trained, well-equipped, and well-led forces with the capability of delivering a combination of lethal and nonlethal applications can greatly enhance a commander's influence on the population and potential threats. Even though stability tasks emphasize nonlethal actions, the ability to engage potential enemies with decisive lethal force remains a sound deterrent and is often a key to success. The successful application of lethal capabilities in stability tasks requires a thorough understanding of when the escalation of force is necessary and when it might be counterproductive. Threat elements may limit their activities if they perceive that those forces are capable and willing to use lethal force. This provides military forces with the opportunity to extend the scope and tempo of nonlethal actions.

HOST NATION COORDINATION AND COOPERATION

1-36. The host nation awareness of escalation-of-force measures and procedures for approaching U.S. military personnel (mobile and static) is necessary to reduce the probability of lethal or nonlethal force on the host nation population. Soldiers must be aware of the local environment and culture in an effort to understand activity and accurately discern threat activity from innocent activity. Unit leaders should—

- Meet with local leaders to make them aware of escalation-of-force procedures and encourage them to pass this information on to the local population. This can increase situational understanding and reduce the probability of escalation-of-force incidents.
- Encourage direct interaction with the local population by patrols as they move among the local population.
- Take steps to learn the culture, local norms, and cyclical activities; ensure that Soldiers are made aware of these activities; and ensure that Soldiers and are given guidance and intent on how to react. These activities and events may include—
  - Calendar events that may significantly increase pedestrian and vehicular traffic.
  - Events, cultural celebrations, or religious holidays which may result in large crowds that congregate in specific locations or move along traditional routes.
  - Other activities that may seem out of the ordinary or that may appear threatening to Soldiers not familiar with the culture and norms.
- Be cognizant of local business locations and their operating hours and the impact that military operations have on these businesses. While missions that affect the businesses may not be avoidable efforts to reduce the effects, coupled with communication with local merchants, may diffuse tensions and increase understanding.
- Ensure that Soldiers exercise positive muzzle control and situational understanding regarding the direction in which weapons are trained. The inadvertent pointing of weapons at local citizens may raise tensions and incite an incident, resulting in an escalation-of-force incident.

1-37. Units that have a good understanding of how to positively shape the operational environment (using information and related capabilities and actively planning for consequence management) can achieve greater long-term protection for U.S. and multinational forces and civilians alike. The resulting mitigation and reduction of escalation-of-force-related incidents can greatly enhance protection efforts and reduce the threat to civilian life and property. Secondary benefits of increased Soldier and leader engagement with the local population are unintended consequences, counteradversary information activities, and increases in local support for friendly forces and their collective mission.

INCIDENTS

1-38. In the event that an escalation-of-force incident occurs, it is critical that Soldiers and leaders are trained and capable of executing appropriate actions at the incident site. Appropriate actions at the incident site can provide valuable information and evidence that can be critical in determining the facts that surround the incident, validating or revising escalation-of-force procedures and preventing future incidents. Commanders and leaders should ensure that—

- Immediate actions at an incident site are prescribed and understood by Soldiers and leaders. This includes securing the site to protect evidence when the security situation permits.

- Soldiers understand reporting procedures. All escalation-of-force incidents are reported immediately, and follow-up reports are sent as updated information is available. This ensures that technical personnel (explosive ordnance disposal, medical, military police, staff judge advocate) are alerted and mobilized as necessary.
- Evidence collection procedures are followed (when the security environment permits) to preserve evidence that is pertinent to follow-on investigations. Military police and USACIDC personnel should be notified in cases where escalation-of-force incidents result in the death of any individual.
- Escalation-of-force incidents are investigated thoroughly to—
  - Determine incident facts.
  - Identify gaps in security or failure to follow established rules of engagement and escalation-of-force procedures.
  - Provide lessons learned for validation or revision of escalation-of-force tactics, techniques, and procedures.
- Leaders and Soldiers are familiar with the compensation and claims process for escalation-of-force incidents. The staff judge advocate should be notified when claims against the United States are likely following an escalation-of-force incident.
- Local leaders are appropriately engaged to mitigate potentially damaged relations with the local population and reduce the likelihood of retaliation. These activities can also educate the population on escalation-of-force procedures.

Chapter 2

Organizations and Capabilities

Military police Soldiers are the centerpiece of the Military Police Corps Regiment. They are the foundation of military police forces and the repository of policing and corrections technical capabilities and expertise that is required to provide military police support to the combined arms team. Perhaps the most significant contribution by the military police Soldier is reduced force signature and their almost universal acceptance by civilians in an area of operations. Military police forces are viewed as policing organizations with a focus on protection roles and only limited roles as an operating force. Although military police can provide commanders with several lethal capabilities, they are not generally perceived as operating forces. This view allows military police to operate and interface with local nationals in a positive way that operating forces cannot. This chapter describes the military police organizations, the capabilities available to the combatant commander, and the framework for generating and organizing these capabilities.

SECTION I – MILITARY POLICE CORPS REGIMENT

2-1. The police skills and mind-set of the military police Soldier form the basic building block for the Military Police Corps Regiment. Forming three of these uniquely trained Soldiers into a team forms the basic military police team that is the foundation and centerpiece of tactical military police organizations. Four teams form a squad, three squads build a platoon, and three platoons create a military police company. These units become the tailored forces and repository of the expertise and technical skills required to provide military police support to the maneuver commander. Regardless of the importance of equipment or the expansion of technological capabilities, military police Soldiers are key human components that accomplish missions and enable successful military police operations.

2-2. The rigors of service and combat bind Soldiers together. Their character comes from professional standards and experiences that are honed in home station law enforcement activities and training and is further forged on the battlefields of the modern era. The military police Soldier holds fast to the professional standards embodied in the Army. With high moral and ethical values and proven warrior ethos, military police Soldiers are trained and capable of transitioning through the use-of-force continuum. At any given moment, today's Soldier will be conversing in an authoritative, friendly manner. In the next moment, he will be making split-second decisions to defend with deadly force, depending on the escalation of the situation. The military police Soldier brings this focused and trained response to tactical missions. Additionally, the military police Soldier has international recognition as a trained police officer. That recognition allows military police Soldiers to accomplish tasks on the battlefield when other units may be unacceptable to local populations due to their perceived combat role.

2-3. The military police Soldier is highly suited for unique interaction with local populations. He and must be technically and tactically proficient and must know how to effectively use interpersonal communications skills. His competence, character, and commitment represent the foundation of a trained and ready Army military police force. The military police Soldier's competence is measured through their certification. For advancement, military police professionals must demonstrate competence (the mastery of specific technical capabilities and tactical tasks). The character of military police professionals ensures that they use their expertise on behalf of the American people and only according to the law. The commitment of military police reflects each Soldier's willingness to put the requirements of the Army and Nation above their personal goals.

2-4. Military police Soldiers must be able to accomplish tasks while operating alone or in groups. The operational environment requires military police Soldiers to have a fundamental understanding of the operational variables used to frame the analysis of the operational environment. Military police Soldiers and leaders must exercise mature judgment and innovation under stressful circumstances and be capable of learning and adapting to meet the demands of an adaptive and changing enemy and criminal threat. Leadership links the technical and tactical competence of Soldiers to operational success by employing and maintaining increasingly complex and sophisticated equipment and executing a variety of offensive, defensive, stability, and DSCA tasks.

2-5. Military police disciplines are key enablers for success during decisive action. The Military Police Corps Regiment provides enhanced focus and support for joint requirements. This extends across the Military Police Corps Regiment in the areas of organization, training, equipment, and mission command. It also promotes joint and multinational interoperability and an expeditionary force mind-set. This mind-set is inculcated in military police leaders and organizations in the operational Army and the generating force. The Military Police Corps Regiment consists of Regular Army, Army National Guard, and Army Reserve military police organizations (and Army civilians and affiliated contractors and agencies within the civilian community) with a diverse range of capabilities that are focused toward supporting the Army and the mission. The Regular Army component of the Military Police Corps Regiment consists of the Office of the Provost Marshal General (OPMG), USAMPS, USACIDC, ACC, and Regular Army military police units within the geographic combatant commands and Army commands. The National Guard and Reserve military police structures consist of two military police commands and Reserve Component military police, criminal investigative organizations, and detention organizations at the brigade level and below. The Reserve Component military police force constitutes approximately 60 percent of the Army military police force structure and includes a wide range of specialized capabilities. The Military Police Corps Regiment has the capability to integrate with other forces and supports the planning, preparation, and execution of joint operations. The Regiment is experienced at interagency support and leverage of non-military and nongovernmental policing and security assets to support combined and joint operations to achieve mission accomplishment.

2-6. The generating force of the Military Police Corps Regiment includes the OPMG, USAMPS, USACIDC, ACC, and the human resource managers in the U.S. Army Human Resources Command. Together, these components generate and manage the centerpiece of those forces that conduct military police operations. The Military Police Corps Regiment trains, educates, and manages military police Soldiers in a variety of military police-related occupational specialties. The military police branch proponent is USAMPS, which is collocated with the U.S. Army Engineer School and the U.S. Army CBRN School at MSCoE. Colocation at MSCoE complements the efforts of these three branch proponent schools to synchronize their doctrine, organization, training, materiel, leadership and education, personnel, and facilities domains and other support capabilities across the warfighting functions. The Military Police Corps Regiment is represented by various military police organizations and capabilities that are at the tactical to operational levels (table 2-1).

Table 2-1. Military Police Corps Regiment across the components

Military Police Capabilities		Force Provider		
		RA	USAR	ARNG
Military police mission command headquarters units	Military police command		x	x
	Military police brigade	x	x	x
	CID group	x		
	Military police battalion	x	x	x
	Military police detention battalion	x	x	x
	CID battalion	x	x	x

Table 2-1. Military Police Corps Regiment across the components (continued)

Military Police Capabilities		Force Provider		
		RA	USAR	ARNG
Organic military police staff elements and platoons	Corps PM section	x		
	Division PM section	x		x
	MEB military police operations cell	x	x	x
	ABCT PM section	x		x
	IBCT PM section	x		x
	SBCT PM section	x		x
Baseline companies	Military police company	x	x	x
	Military police detention company	x	x	x
	Guard company		x	x
Specialized military police units, teams, and individuals	GBI security company			x
	Military police law enforcement detachment	x	x	x
	Detention camp liaison detachment		x	
	Theater detainee reporting center		x	
	CID element	x	x	x
	MWD headquarters team	x		x
	MWD squad	x		x
	MWD patrol drug detection dog team	x		x

Legend:	
ABCT	armor brigade combat team
ARNG	Army National Guard
CID	criminal investigation division
GBI	ground-based interceptor
IBCT	infantry brigade combat team
MEB	maneuver enhancement brigade
MWD	military working dog
PM	provost marshal
SBCT	Stryker brigade combat team
RA	Regular Army
USAR	U.S. Army Reserve

OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL

2-7. The Provost Marshal General is the senior Active Army leader within the Military Police Corps Regiment. He serves as the Department of Defense (DOD) executive agent for forensics and biometrics and as the commander for USACIDC and ACC. As a special staff officer on the Army staff, the Provost Marshal General advises the Chief of Staff, U.S. Army; the Vice Chief of Staff, U.S. Army; the Director of the Army Staff; and departmental heads of the Army staff on matters that are related to military police operations. The OPMG Staff is the policy arm of the Military Police Corps Regiment.

2-8.   The OPMG provides a comprehensive Army policing strategy to reduce crime, increase safety, and enhance security within military communities. The OPMG leads and directs policy for matters that relate to Army law enforcement, police intelligence, physical security, forensics, biometrics, corrections, and detention, criminal investigations, provost marshal activities, and military police support throughout the range of military operations. Additionally, the OPMG provides direct support to the Army Deputy Chief of Staff, G-3/5/7 management and execution of the Army Force Protection mission by providing antiterrorism operation and intelligence cell capabilities. The OPMG supports the Army by developing policies, plans, and programs; establishing requirements; and providing resources to support manning, training, and equipment requirements to meet current and future operations as defined by the Secretary of the Army. The OPMG is also responsible for establishing enduring expeditionary forensic and biometrics capabilities.

2-9. Personnel may obtain information from OPMG through the—
- OPMG Web site at <https://www.us.army.mil/suite/page/409448>.
- OPMG points of contact information:
  - Antiterrorism Section, (703) 695-4912.
  - Antiterrorism Operations and Intelligence Cell, (703) 697-9529.
  - Operations, (703) 693-5488.
  - National Detainee Reporting Center, (703) 325-9810 or 2869.
  - Law Enforcement, (703) 695-4210.
  - Physical Security, (703) 695-4210.
  - Corrections and Detention, (703) 325-9157.

U.S. ARMY MILITARY POLICE SCHOOL

2-10. The USAMPS provides military police Soldiers with military education, including core, tactical, technical, and leader education for officers, noncommissioned officers, and junior enlisted Soldiers. Additionally, specialized functional course training is provided to include physical security, criminal investigation, advanced law enforcement training skills, police intelligence/crime analysis, and military working dog (MWD) handling. More than 42 functional courses are offered beyond initial-entry military police training and professional military police education courses.

2-11. The USAMPS also hosts and manages several boards, centers, conferences, and cells (standing and ad hoc) as a means to support the doctrine, organization, training, materiel, leadership and education, personnel, and facilities domains of the Army staff, generating force, and Army Service component commanders. They gather lessons learned from military police units in operations and integrate those lessons into the institutional training base. Operational support is provided to combatant commanders and military police forces and staffs through reachback, mobile training teams, and other mechanisms.

2-12. USAMPS produces tactically and technically competent military police Soldiers capable of contributing to their first unit of assignment. Professional military education for officers, warrant officers, and noncommissioned officers enables them to immediately contribute as military police leaders on their return to their units or as military police staff of a joint force assisting the joint force commander by giving advice and recommendations to the commander and other officers. (Chapter 5 discusses military police staff roles and responsibilities in greater detail.) The military police branch proponent works closely with OPMG to leverage a vast pool of additional technical competencies provided by DOD civilians and affiliated contractors and agencies within the civilian community who are working with USAMPS and OPMG. Technical support is available in the direct support of military police staff and forces through reachback capabilities.

2-13. Personnel may obtain information from USAMPS through the—
- USAMPS Web site at <www.us.army.mil> or <www.wood.army.mil/usamps>.
- USAMPS points of contact:
  - Antiterrorism Branch, (573) 596-2097.
  - Law Enforcement Branch, (573) 596-2999.
  - Crime Scene Investigations Branch, (573) 563-8136.

- Critical Incident Peer Support, (573) 563-7868.
- Physical Security Branch, (573) 563-5585.
- Family Advocacy Law Enforcement Training Division, (573) 563-7865.
- Law Division, (573) 563-7871.
- Inter-Service Nonlethal Individual Weapons Instructor Course, (573) 596-2789.
- Protective Service Training Branch, (573) 596-1970.
- MSCoE Military Police Lessons Learned Cell, (573) 563-2740.
- Military Police Warfighter Forum Analyst, (573) 563-2743.
- Corrections, (573) 596-2652.
- Detainee Operations, (573) 596-2654.
- Directorate of Training, (573) 563-8098.
- Directorate of Plans and Operations, (573) 563-7802.
- Military Police Doctrine, (573) 563-4074.
- Individual Training Development Division, (573) 563-8119.
- Special Tactics Training Division, (573) 596-0730.
- Antiterrorism Evasive Driving Branch, (573) 596-1555.
- Personnel Proponency, Initiatives, and Integration, (573) 563-3014.
- Army Nonlethal Scalable Effects Center, (573) 563-7092.
- MWD Handler Course at Lackland Air Force Base, Texas, (201) 671-3406.
- MWD Supervisor/Training Course at Lackland Air Force Base, Texas, (201) 671-2461.
- Traffic Management and Accident Investigations Course at Lackland Air Force Base, Texas, (201) 671-3211.

- Army Training Support Center Web site at <www.atsc.army.mil>.
- Army Training Information Architecture Web site at <www.adtdl.army.mil> or <www.train.army.mil>.
- Reimer Digital Library Web site at <www.adtdl.army.mil> or <www.train.army.mil>.

U.S. ARMY CRIMINAL INVESTIGATION COMMAND

2-14. The history of USACIDC goes back to World War I when General John J. Pershing directed the Provost Marshal General of his American Expeditionary Forces to organize a criminal investigation division (CID) within the Military Police Corps for the purpose of detecting and preventing crimes within the territory occupied by the American Expeditionary Forces. Today, USACIDC is the sole Army agency that is responsible for investigating felony crimes. USACIDC provides investigative support to commanders at all echelons. The headquarters, USACIDC; and the U.S. Army Crime Records Center (USACRC) are generating force elements. USACIDC groups and battalions are elements of the operational Army. USACIDC elements, while categorized as operational or generating force elements, have generating-force and operational missions (see FM 1-01). The USACIDC mission includes—

- Investigating and deterring serious crimes.
- Conducting sensitive or serious investigations.
- Collecting, analyzing, processing, and disseminating police intelligence.
- Providing forensic laboratory support.
- Maintaining Army criminal records.
- Providing protective services to key Army and DOD leadership.
- Enhancing the commander's crime prevention and protection programs.
- Performing logistics security operations.

2-15. USACIDC operations support the senior mission commander or geographic combatant commander in maintaining discipline and order by preventing and investigating felony crimes, which reduce unit ability to train and fight. During investigations, USACIDC concentrates efforts on serious crimes, such as wrongful deaths, controlled substance offenses, theft (based on the amount limit identified in AR 195-2),

fraud, sexual misconduct, assaults, cyber crimes, and other national security offenses. The USACIDC also conducts sensitive and special investigations involving senior Army officials and those associated with classified programs. (See chapter 7 for a detailed discussion of USACIDC.)

2-16. The USACIDC provides technical investigative support, integrating its organic capabilities with those of other federal investigative agencies, joint and combined police activities, Army military police activities, and other sources of military police-related reachback support.

U.S. ARMY CORRECTIONS COMMAND

2-17. The ACC is a field-operating agency under the OPMG. The ACC provides a single headquarters that exercises mission command, operational oversight, and policy support for the Army Corrections System. The ACC provides mission command for civilian and military personnel, and manages military prisoners in military and Federal Bureau of Prisons facilities or on mandatory supervised release or parole. The ACC is primarily a generating force headquarters, but it does have selected operational Army units.

2-18. The ACC provides efficiencies and a unified and consistent application of policy and best industrial practices to provide U.S. military prisoners with treatment, educational, and vocational programs in a safe and secure corrections environment. The ACC prepares military prisoners to be productive and law-abiding members of society after release.

2-19. The ACC provides wartime support to senior mission commanders and geographic combatant commanders by the overseeing of the corrections and detention specialists' skill field and by assigning corrections and detention specialists to warfighting commands as technical advisors on detainee operations. Corrections and detention specialists are also assigned to the BCT, military police brigade, and division and corps staffs, providing immediate and improved detention operations planning and execution during combat operations.

MILITARY POLICE OPERATIONAL FORCE CAPABILITIES

2-20. Army military police forces of the operational force operate at the strategic, operational, and tactical levels across the range of military operations. Units are organized in an adaptable manner to support military police peacetime, combat, investigative, and detention operational requirements. Military police forces operate as an integral member of the combined arms team during peace and war to provide a full range of military police capabilities. They execute military police tasks at the tactical and operational levels of war in support of combat maneuver forces and provide technical policing expertise throughout the range of military operations.

2-21. The Army military police provide a complementary and interdependent relationship between four major categories of units. The four categories include military police (to include staff elements) organic to non-military police organizations and three categories of military police held in a military police force pool. These three categories within the force pool include all operational Army military police units not organic to a BCT or a headquarters staff. The assets in the force pool exist to augment or be task-organized to BCTs with organic military police assets and BCTs without any organic military police and to provide necessary military police capabilities to echelons above the BCT. The force pool consists of military police headquarters units, baseline units, and specialized military police units.

2-22. Military police headquarters units provide mission command for military police operations. They consist of the theater military police command, the military police brigade, the CID group, and three types of military police battalions. Each has a staff that allows the commander to provide mission command for assorted and various military police organizations. Most of them are capable of the providing mission command for other selected non-military police units to support multifunctional missions, such as operational area security and detention operations or resettlement operations, or some aspects of gap-crossing operations.

2-23. Baseline military police units consist primarily of tactically to operationally focused military police and military police detention companies. These units may be task-organized to BCTs or tasked to perform other supporting missions, to include those typically performed under the mission command of a maneuver enhancement brigade (MEB), a military police battalion, or a military police brigade at the division or

corps level. All of these units may perform roles and missions under the mission command of a functionally focused military police battalion or brigade or the multifunctional MEB.

2-24. Specialized military police units are a variety of typically low-density, or otherwise unique, military police forces that provide the remaining category of military police support. These units are generally more technically focused units that, while providing selected support at the tactical level, are focused on providing their specialized military police capabilities in support of the operational to strategic levels in unified land operations. These specialized forces include modules for MWD support, detention camp liaison, detainee reporting center functions, police operations, and USACIDC support. (See table 2-1, page 2-2, for a general listing of these forces by component.) While special in their own right, other elements, created and trained for special missions such as special reaction teams, police transition teams, or similar teams (such as evidence response teams) are not included in this category.

ORGANIC MILITARY POLICE

2-25. Each BCT has an organic military police platoon. Each BCT is organized with an organic military police planning cell that includes an investigative agent (as an advisor on police intelligence). The BCT military police platoon is organic to the multifunctional brigade special troops battalion (BSTB) headquarters to facilitate support across the BCT. These organic military police platoons and staff planners provide the minimum-essential military police capabilities to support BCT operations. The military police platoon is capable of performing prioritized tasks from within any of the military police disciplines. The supported commander must prioritize the efforts of the platoon and optimize its unique capabilities to support and nest within the overall main effort or decisive operation. Sometimes, this may be in an economy-of-force, shaping, or sustaining role. During offensive, defensive, or stability tasks, the BCT should plan for the task organization of additional baseline military police elements, to include a military police company and, in special cases, a battalion for necessary mission command military police operations. Other specialized military police units and equipment may support tailored military police operations when their advanced military police skill sets are required. Organic military police personnel train with, and remain an integral part of their parent BCT force pool capabilities.

2-26. The military police staff cells in echelons above the BCT ensure the integration of military police capabilities within their echelon. Military police staff members may be split among the various command posts of a given echelon, but the senior military police officer typically functions as the provost marshal for that echelon and headquarters. The military police staff representation within the MEB is designed to be especially robust to support the typical roles performed by the MEB. (For more information on the MEB, see FM 3-90.31.)

FORCE POOL CAPABILITIES

2-27. The Military Police Corps Regiment is designed to provide mission support to the Army from home station and throughout the deployment process. The following organizational descriptions identify the architecture that the Military Police Corps Regiment uses to provide the capabilities required to support the Army and other Services as part of a joint operation. These descriptions illustrate military police unit missions, capabilities, dependencies, and basis of allocation. Up-to-date standard requirement codes and unit authorizations may be found at the Army Force Management System Web site at <https://webtaads.belvoir.army.mil/unprotected/splash/>.

Military Police Headquarters Units

2-28. The mission command of military police forces is provided by three primary echelons of military police headquarters units—the command, brigade, and battalion. Multifunctional units (MEB and BSTB), at brigade and battalion echelons, discussed later in this chapter, may also provide mission command for military police forces in cases where military police support is integral to the mission. Mission command for military police technical capabilities and missions is provided by the theater military police command, the military police brigade (or CID group), and the battalion (three varieties).

Theater Military Police Command

2-29. The theater military police command is the only organization designed for operational command without the augmentation of military police capabilities at echelons above corps level. It will often provide mission command for the joint force commander if an operational military police headquarters is required. The theater military police command is focused on the operational mission command of military police operations across all three military police disciplines and typically serves as the senior theater or land component military police headquarters. It provides mission command for all assigned or attached Army military police brigades and other military police units and missions for the combatant or joint task force commander. While not providing mission command over CID groups, it does provide required sustainment. When directed, it may also provide mission command for policing elements from other Service, multinational, and contract security personnel.

2-30. Tasks performed by the theater military police command include providing support for all operational planning for the theater across all of the military police disciplines and the integration of police intelligence operations throughout all missions. The theater military police command synchronizes all military police planning and support for the combatant or joint task force commander, providing peacetime training and support of building partner capacity for their supported respective combatant commanders. The command plans and operates in close coordination with the senior contract construction agents in the area of operations. When deployed, the commander of the theater military police command will be designated as the theater provost marshal and will also serve as the commander, detainee operations.

2-31. The theater military police command is capable of rapid deployment of deployable staff elements and organizations to support the needs of the operational commander. It is capable of providing a wide range of technical military police expertise and support. The theater military police command is also capable of integrating policing expertise and support operationally and tactically with unified action partners. The command is enabled by global reachback capabilities to include potential sources of expertise in the civilian community.

Military Police Brigade

2-32. The military police brigade is one of the functional brigades of the Army and is capable of planning, integrating, and directing the execution of military police missions conducted by up to five mission-tailored military police battalions; integrating capabilities from all three military police disciplines; and integrating police intelligence operations. It may also provide mission command for other non-the military police units that are focused on performing area support, detention, or resettlement tasks and synchronizing military police support across multiple organizations that control an area of operations in support of stability tasks. A functional military police brigade is not designed to control terrain; significant augmentation and task organization would be required to accomplish a terrain management mission.

2-33. One or more military police brigades are required in the division or corps when the number of military police units or the functional nature of military police missions (such as the synchronization of technical military police capabilities across an area of operations) requires functional brigade level mission command capability. A military police brigade is also required when military police missions exceed the mission command capability of the multifunctional MEB. A corps is typically allocated a military police brigade headquarters for providing mission command of military police units. Once deployed, military police brigades become the focal point for apportioning and allocating mission-tailored military police forces across the area of operation.

2-34. The military police brigade is capable of supporting a joint task force commander or component commander (land, air, or sea) and providing mission command of all U.S. military policing units, host nation security forces and the management of contracted civilians within an area of operations. The military police brigade has the ability to provide a deployable command post and staff expertise for providing mission command of military police operations as required. With augmentation, the military police brigade may serve as a joint military police headquarters and may be the senior military police headquarters, that provide the synchronization, coordination, and mission command of technical policing and detention operations when deployed in a joint operations area if full-theater military police command deployment is not required.

2-35. Based on the tactical situation, a military police brigade commander may be designated as the theater provost marshal and the commander of detainee operations when a military police command is not required. In this situation, the brigade commander and staff will provide the overall mission command of deployed military police units. When the theater military police command is not available, the military police brigade is also capable of integrating policing expertise and support (operationally and tactically) with unified-action partners. It may also provide the mission command of task-organized forces that include units from other functional brigades or specialty units.

Criminal Investigation Division Group

2-36. The CID group ensures the connectivity among all CID units within and external to the theater. It establishes and maintains links with supported units and unified-action partners on matters pertaining to CID operations. The CID group is investigative-focused and provides the functional mission command of USACIDC regionally focused battalions. CID units are not typically in the chain of command of other non-CID military police units, but they generally receive support from military police units as they are dispersed across the battlefield to perform their mission. Whenever possible, CID units colocate with other military police units. This provides unified military police support and facilitates sustainment. A CID group will typically colocate with the senior military police organization in-theater if it is deployed and will provide mission command for all CID battalions in-theater.

Military Police Battalions

2-37. Each military police battalion is designed to perform a different collection of military police tasks, although there are overlapping abilities among the three and each support the detention operations discipline and the police intelligence operations integrating function. There are three types of military police battalions in the force pool:

- **Military police battalion.** The military police battalion has the largest number of units in the military police force pool. The military police battalion is the most versatile of the battalion headquarters, conducting all three military police disciplines, and is the only military police battalion level element optimized to conduct those military police tasks that comprise the security and mobility support discipline. While selected military police companies may conduct detention operations, the military police battalion is typically focused on other missions. It is the most likely of the three military police battalions to perform as a task force and in support of close combat operations.
- **Military police detention battalion.** The military police detention battalion has the second largest number of units in the military police force pool and is designed with a focus on the military police tasks that comprise the detention operations discipline. When fully operational, the military police detention battalion may operate a detainee facility capable of interning 4,000 detainees.
- **CID battalion.** The CID battalion is not a tactical battalion but rather a headquarters that is focused solely on CID activities. Like the CID group, it is investigative-focused and provides functional mission command of USACIDC regionally focused elements. (For more information on CID, see chapter 7.)

2-38. Battalions are structured to provide the mission command of two to five companies or elements. The military police detention battalions are capable of planning, integrating, and directing the execution of military police missions conducted by a mix of military police companies. These two tactical-type battalions are typically found within a military police brigade, a MEB, or in support of a BCT. CID battalions are more typically found at the corps or theater level. The military police battalion headquarters is capable of providing mission command for tactical military police missions or a multifunctional task force organized for specific missions. Military police detention battalions conducting detention operations may provide mission command a task-organized force consisting of military police, military intelligence (MI), legal, medical, and other specialties.

2-39. Military police or military police detention battalions may be assigned or attached to a MEB as a mission command headquarters to effectively synchronize and integrate all military police capabilities when required to support a division or higher headquarters. When task-organized to a MEB, a military

police battalion may be further task-organized with subordinate CBRN, engineer, explosive ordnance disposal, and other elements. When operating at the theater level or as part of a military police brigade, the military police detention battalions will typically perform tasks related to their structural specialty.

2-40. When placed in support of a BCT, a military police battalion provides mission command for the integration of military police operations. The battalion may be focused on a single military police discipline or several disciplines at once. The military police battalion may be organized to perform as a task force when the BCT is conducting combined arms operations. The battalion may be given responsibility for a main supply route reconnaissance or clearing operation and may be designated as a task force. The military police battalion headquarters is a likely mission command element for a movement corridor.

2-41. CID battalions are operational units that are subordinate to a CID group. These battalion headquarters provide mission command, staff supervision, and administrative oversight to the subordinate CID elements. Generally, one CID battalion will support a corps or division area of operations and provide mission command for two to five CID elements or expeditionary forensic laboratories operating within the area of operations. These battalions perform the technical supervision and coordination of criminal investigations, criminal intelligence programs, drug suppression activities, and polygraph support and manage logistics security. (For more information on CID capabilities, see chapter 7.)

Baseline Companies

2-42. There are three types of baseline companies in the military police force pool—military police, detention, and guard. They are the primary building blocks from the military police force pool and the main components of the military police detention battalions. Each is designed to perform a different collection of military police tasks. These units are task-organized to BCTs or may be task-organized to a military police battalion headquarters to provide the specific, tailored capabilities needed to support mission requirements. Within the MEB or when in support of BCT operations, the military police company may also find itself part of a CBRN- or engineer-led task force supporting MEB operations or providing multifunctional support outside of the MEB area of operations, to include operations in support of a movement corridor. Like the military police battalion, the military police company is optimized for those military police tasks that comprise the security and mobility support discipline. The only company designed to support close combat is the military police company. Selected military police companies may be required to perform a detention mission. Military police companies are focused on support to maneuver organizations at the tactical level. Military police companies contribute to the maneuver and mobility of the operational Army by—

- Preserving the freedom of movement over main supply routes,
- Improving the protection of high-risk personnel and facilities during security and mobility,
- Providing temporary detention operations for detained individuals.
- Integrating police intelligence through operations to enhance situational understanding, protection, civil control, and law enforcement efforts.

2-43. Guard companies and detention detachments contribute temporary or long-term support to theater detention operations. They can contribute training and expertise to establish or improve corrections operations for the local government. These Soldiers can also assist with establishing a model prison operating system in a new or reused facility managed by the local government. Guard companies can contribute to the corrections operations of a nation by assisting with the temporary holding and security and transport of detainees to and from court proceedings and medical treatment facilities.

2-44. Military police units and Soldiers may contribute law enforcement technical capabilities to assist with policing, corrections, and judicial support for the host nation government and stability tasks in the area of operations. Military police units are ideally suited to conduct police missions with Army and joint policing elements. Military police units are also well suited to work jointly with host nation police patrols to restore or maintain civil order. Military police units can also assist with training local police and establishing police station operations for local police forces. They can work side by side in joint shifts or provide staff assistance through embedded relationships or by frequent or one-time assistance visits. Military police units also maintain safe and secure environments that enable commanders to protect and generate combat power during training, deployment, and redeployment tasks that are associated with Army

generation force requirements in support of unified land operations. Military police also provide a safe and secure environment for Army assets, DA civilians, and military family members who reside on U.S. military bases.

Specialized Military Police Units, Teams, and Individuals and Their Capabilities

2-45. Specialized military police units, teams, and individuals and their associated capabilities are available to support commanders. The Military Police Corps Regiment possesses many unique capabilities at the operational and strategic levels designed for specific augmentation and use at the tactical level. These key capabilities are organized within units that are of limited availability and lower density within the military police force pool than the core military police units. These smaller, more specialized units are designed to support larger military police-related missions and tasks, provide specialized skills augmentation to selected headquarters elements, or provide theater-unique mission sets. This section highlights some of the specialized units and capabilities provided by military police.

Ground-Based Interceptor Security Company

2-46. The ground-based interceptor security company provides fixed-site security for a ground-based interceptor site. The company provides the operational Army with the capability to detect, identify, and eliminate hostile threats to a critical facility— "Level A" site of strategic importance. The sole mission of the ground-based interceptor security company is to secure the ground-based interceptor missile site. This mission focus allows the company to dedicate its tactical assets to the security and defense of the critical site with the minimal diversion of combat power to collateral or other economy-of-force efforts. The ground-based interceptor security company provides a fully functioning, properly resourced guard force capable of conducting sustained and continuous operations necessary for securing critical assets within the expanded perimeter of the ground-based interceptor missile site.

2-47. The ground-based interceptor security company consists of a headquarters section that provides mission command, services, and support for three security platoons. Its headquarters section provides planning and execution guidance, allocating and task-organizing units based on requirements and mission variables; prioritizes support efforts through risk analysis; and cross-levels support between elements as needed. The security platoons are primarily responsible for the execution and performance of the guard and quick-reaction force mission at the ground-based interceptor missile site. A security platoon is capable of securing and defending the ground-based interceptor missile site from Level I and Level II threats.

Military Police Law Enforcement Detachments

2-48. Military police law enforcement detachments are built as "table of organization and equipment" units to be employed in a team concept. These specialized teams provide advanced skills that can be deployed to support specific law enforcement requirements in an area of operations. Modules that comprise an operational military police law enforcement detachment may be deployed as an entire detachment, providing comprehensive policing capabilities; as individual teams to augment existing capabilities; or to meet specific capability requirements.

2-49. When at home station, the teams that comprise the military police law enforcement detachment are assigned to law enforcement duties within the provost marshal's office and are the dedicated technical police expertise that supports U.S. Army installations. Deployed military police law enforcement detachments are normally assigned to a military police brigade and are specifically trained and equipped to provide the technical supervision, planning, employment, and coordination of support for police operations. Like at home station, law enforcement detachments form the core of policing capabilities on U.S. military bases and base camps within mature theaters of operation, providing the administrative and technical expertise to operate forward military police law enforcement activities in support of a geographic combatant commander's effort to maintain good order and discipline.

2-50. Police teams have the capability to train and mentor the newly appointed police leadership and other experienced indigenous or host nation police personnel. These individuals can then assist with training the rest of the host nation force. Another function of the military police law enforcement detachment is to plan, train, and monitor the military police support of host nation police development and support, such as law

enforcement raids, high-risk apprehensions, cordons and searches, and police intelligence operations. A military police law enforcement detachment consists of—

- A headquarters team to provide personnel, logistics, and administrative support.
- An operations team to provide the planning, employment, and coordination of law enforcement support and the technical supervision of police teams.
- A desk team to establish and maintain police desk operations, to include receiving calls and complaints; prioritizing and tasking patrols and investigative personnel as required; and ensuring the completion of initial reports.
- A force protection and physical security team to assist in risk and threat identification and mitigation, crisis planning, and the safeguarding of personnel and equipment at a fixed site.
- A traffic management and enforcement team to investigate traffic accidents and provide expertise regarding trafficability, traffic flow, and enforcement regulation.
- A military police investigations team to investigate criminal incidents; conduct surveillance operations; and collect and maintain evidence and operational information, to include personal identification (biometric) and police information. Military police investigators maintain liaison with CID elements regarding criminal investigations and information.

Military Working Dogs

2-51. The Military Police Corps Regiment is the Army proponent for MWD training. Training for dogs and dog handlers is conducted at Lackland Air Force Base. There are two types of MWDs in the Military Police Corps Regiment:

- **Patrol explosive detection dogs.** Patrol explosive detection dogs are trained to passively respond to explosive material and components.
- **Patrol drug detection dogs.** Patrol drug detection dogs are trained to passively respond to drug paraphernalia and narcotics.

2-52. Patrol explosive detection dogs and patrol drug detection dogs are also trained as patrol dogs. Patrol dogs are used in routine military police law enforcement patrol operations at bases and base camps. The patrol explosive detection dog can provide support to maneuver commanders in tactical search missions against hostile forces by detecting firearms, ammunition, and explosives. All dogs train and certify with a specific handler and must be employed as a team. (See ATTP 3-39.34 for additional discussion of MWD capabilities.)

2-53. MWD squads and teams deploy based on specific requirements within an area of operations. Military police MWD elements consist of—

- A kennel master to coordinate the logistics support, operational integration, and technical supervision of MWD teams.
- An MWD squad (six MWDs and six MWD handlers) to provide the detection of explosives and explosive residue in support of police operations and protection efforts, such as building or area clearing operations, entry control points or access control points, and traffic and border checkpoints. Patrol explosive detection dog teams are dual-trained for the police patrol activities and explosive detection.
- An MWD patrol drug detection dog team to provide the detection of narcotics and narcotics residue in support of the commander's health and welfare inspections, police operations, customs operations, and maneuver commanders in support of tactical search missions. The patrol drug detection dog teams are dual-trained for police patrol activities and drug detection, and maneuver commanders in support of tactical search missions.

High-Risk Personnel Protection

2-54. The USACIDC provides protective service details to Army high-risk personnel serving in designated positions based on rank, position, and geographical location. The USACIDC trains agents in protective services tasks and assigns teams to individuals as required. The USAMPS provides the Protective Services Training and Antiterrorism Evasive Driving Course (Staff Driver), Antiterrorism General Officer Driving Course (General Officer), and High-Risk Personnel Security Course to train for high-risk personnel

protection. The Protective Services Training and Antiterrorism Evasive Driving Course (Staff Driver) and the Antiterrorism General Officer Driving Course (General Officer) provide specialized training to personnel who will conduct protective service operations for executive level DOD leaders who are potential targets of terrorism and criminal acts. Emphasis is placed on the spectrum of protective service tasks that Soldiers may perform to protect senior leaders. The High-Risk Personnel Security Course provides specialized training to personnel, regardless of military occupational specialty, who are assigned to conduct high-risk personnel security operations in combat environments and are responsible for protecting commanders in key leadership positions, as designated by the combatant commander or identified through a personal security vulnerability assessment. (See ATP 3-39.35 for additional discussion of protective services).

Customs

2-55. The Military Police Corps Regiment provides military police Soldiers with trained customs skills to support unit deployment and redeployment operations. Customs support is executed with U.S. Customs and Border Protection approval and oversight. Military police Soldiers inspect and examine all DOD cargo, equipment, aircraft, vehicles, and people leaving from outside the continental United States (OCONUS) through their forward-deployed location. Inspectors ensure that returning military equipment conforms to U.S. Department of Agriculture standards and that all gear returning with personnel serving abroad complies with U.S. customs regulations for reentry into the United States. Army customs inspectors have jurisdiction over all customs and operational wash down sites in their area of operations.

Police Development and Support Teams

2-56. The Military Police Corps Regiment provides military police Soldiers to teach and train host nation police operations to maintain order and to enable the rule of law. This training specialty can include standing up and running an initial law enforcement training academy for host nation police and establishing and running police infrastructure and police station operations. The training can include many levels of assistance visits, from being embedded, to frequent or infrequent visits based on the needs of the supported host nation (See ATTP 3-39.10 for additional discussion of host nation police development.)

Detention Units

2-57. The Military Police Corps Regiment conducts detention operations using military police brigades and military police detention battalions. These units require specialized augmentation by several specialty units for the operation to be fully in compliance with international laws, treaties, and DOD and Army policy. The specialty units that provide unique services are the military police detention company, the detention liaison detachment, the guard company, MWD teams, and the theater detainee reporting center.

Airborne and Air Assault Operations

2-58. The Military Police Corps Regiment has specialized airborne- and air assault-qualified forces to support organizations conducting airborne and air assault operations. Military police Soldiers attend qualifying, badge-producing airborne and air assault schools before assignment to airborne- and air assault-qualified units. These military police units are capable of employment from an air plane or helicopter, including such specialized skills as rappel master, jump master, and air drop and sling load riggers for equipment delivery by air.

SECTION II – UNIFIED ACTION: JOINT/INTERAGENCY/MULTINATIONAL

2-59. *Unified action* is the synchronization, coordination, and/or integration of the activities of the governmental and nongovernmental entities with military operations to achieve unity of effort (JP 1). It describes the wide scope of actions taking place within combatant commands, subordinate commands, or joint task forces under the overall direction of the commanders of those commands. Public law charges combatant commanders with employing military forces through unified action. Under unified action, commanders integrate joint, single Service, special, and supporting operations with interagency, nongovernmental, and multinational (to include the United Nations) operations (see JP 0-2).

2-60. In unified land operations, Army military police forces operate as part of a joint force and often within a multinational and interagency environment across the range of military operations. Operations are grouped in to three areas that compose the range of military operations (see JP 3-0):

- Military engagement, security cooperation, and deterrence operations.
- Crises response and limited contingency operations.
- Major operations and campaigns.

2-61. Each Service has police organizations and capabilities that reflect their own Service traditions, roles, and approaches to maintaining order and discipline. An understanding of the police capabilities and limitations of each Service may assist the joint operations staff in tailoring police organizations into effective and efficient multi-Services or joint police elements to accomplish the mission. The senior police leader serving on the joint staff is responsible for providing comprehensive recommendations to the joint force commander on the effective employment of all joint and combined military and civilian police capabilities in support of joint operations. The police organizations of each Service component can be called on to provide support to the other Service to meet joint force requirements. (See JP 3-08, JP 3-63, NATO Standardization Agreement [STANAG] 2085, and NATO STANAG 2226 for additional information.)

JOINT/INTERAGENCY/MULTINATIONAL CAPABILITIES

2-62. Service component police capabilities are not fully interoperable. All Services do not currently conduct military policing activities using the three military police disciplines, but there are similarities that facilitate the alignment of capabilities and missions. Planners must be careful to accurately identify the police capabilities required for an operation and then match that requirement with the proper Service component police element. The Navy master-at-arms and Naval Criminal Investigative Service, the U.S. Air Force Security Forces and Office of Special Investigations, and the Marine Corps Military Police and CID provide police and security capabilities specific to their respective Services. Some of their capabilities may be similar to Army military police; however, their unique mission sets inevitably produce different capabilities that may complement or enhance Army military police capabilities in a joint construct.

OTHER MILITARY POLICE CAPABILITIES

2-63. In addition to U.S. military police forces, multinational partner military police can provide valuable capabilities. Host nation, multinational, and U.S. civilian contractors provide labor, materiel, infrastructure, and services and may possess certain policing capabilities and expertise that are specifically adapted to the local environment. There are other benefits to using multinational, host nation, and U.S. contractors, but their use must be weighed against their potential limitations. The mixture of capabilities may change during the phases of an operation and may require management across Service lines to ensure that the joint force commander has appropriate forces in place.

2-64. Host nation police capabilities may be available if an adequate infrastructure exists. Potentially, this could include a wide array of civil, military, or public works organizations. Sometimes, it is also possible to contract a limited range of security services with U.S., local, or third world country national organizations and civilian contractors. There are also differences in their applications during stability tasks and DSCA. These assets are typically used to free up military assets, minimizing the military footprint in a theater, when requirements exceed military capabilities or when the military police operations and requirements are to be conducted in areas that are relatively safe from active combat.

CONTINGENCY CONTRACTS

2-65. Security activities may be provided through several contracting agencies and contract vehicles. Contract police and security can be critical to preserving military police units for higher-priority missions. The Army or joint community may contract security and specific technical law enforcement support capabilities where the military police and USACIDC force structure lacks the required capacity or the specific capability does not exist within the Army inventory. Contract assets may also play a significant role in mission accomplishment by providing the joint force commander and joint force military police with additional options and flexibility in general military police and security support.

2-66. Whenever contingency or expeditionary contracts for police or security augmentation or the sustainment of military police capabilities are awarded by a U.S. contracting authority, the contracting officer or the supported force is responsible for quality assurance to ensure the contractor and their employees are providing services and supplies in compliance with the terms and conditions of the contract. Military police commanders must inform their staffs and subordinates of the extent of contracted support and ensure that tasks assigned to the contractor are within the scope of the contract.

INTEGRATION OF CAPABILITIES

2-67. Joint integration does not require joint commands at all echelons, but it does require understanding joint synergy at all levels of command. Joint synergy extends the principles of combined arms to operations conducted by two or more Service components (for more information, see JP 1 and JP 0-2). The strengths of each Service or functional component combine to overcome the limitations or reinforce the effects of the other components. The combination of multiple and diverse joint force capabilities generates combat power more potent than the sum of its parts. Integrating the varied and special capabilities of military police organizations requires an understanding of the various capabilities and limitations of the military police assets available for any given mission. Integration also requires a common understanding of the mission command structure and processes in place to employ military police capabilities in support of unified action.

INTERAGENCY COORDINATION

2-68. Because of the leverage of their wide range of expertise and funding resources, U.S. government agencies can support the joint force commander's mission objectives and greatly expand the capabilities of the joint force. This is true whether the response is international in nature or within the United States. Coordination and a clear understanding of the commander's intent is critical when synchronizing operational efforts involving multiple government agencies. The joint force commander will be required to coordinate with U.S. government agencies to achieve overall U.S. objectives. Joint force military police should have an understanding of the capabilities of these agencies and their support functions. While government agencies may increase the resources engaged in a given operation, they may also increase and complicate the coordination efforts. Military police personnel must be prepared to conduct or support stability tasks by working closely with U.S. departments and agencies, foreign governments and security forces, global and regional international organizations, U.S. and foreign nongovernmental organizations, and private sector individuals and for-profit companies. (See JP 3-27 and JP 3-28 for a discussion of homeland defense, DSCA, and associated interagency coordination.)

2-69. The intricate linkages among the instruments of national power (diplomatic, informational, military, and economic) demand that commanders consider all capabilities and agencies to help achieve the common end state. Interagency coordination forges a vital link between military operations and activities conducted by U.S. government agencies; nongovernmental organizations; and regional, international, and United Nations organizations. Other potential partners include host nation agencies, the U.S. interagency community, and other partners inside and outside of the federal government. Because military police are likely to operate with interagency, foreign, nongovernmental, and intergovernmental organizations in a variety of circumstances, their participation in the joint force commander's interagency process is critical. Two methods for facilitating such coordination are the civil-military operations center and the joint interagency coordination group. (Additional discussion of the civil-military operations center and joint interagency coordination group is provided in the discussion of boards, workgroups, and cells in JP 3-08.)

MULTINATIONAL OPERATIONS

2-70. During multinational operations, U.S. forces establish liaison with assigned multinational forces early in the process. Army forces exchange specialized liaison personnel in fields such as aviation, fire support, military police, intelligence, public affairs, and civil affairs based on mission requirements. Missions to multinational units should reflect the capabilities and limitations of each national contingent. Commanders should give special consideration to "niche" capabilities that multinational police forces may possess. Multinational police forces may possess other policing specialties that exceed or enhance U.S. Service capabilities, such as constabulary capability or increased criminal investigation capacity. Army

military police forces will typically have more mobility, firepower, and communications capability than other military police multinational partners and, in some cases, more than other Services. Aligning capabilities to the missions is an important consideration in multinational operations. Political considerations may make these alignments more difficult to achieve. (See JP 3-16 for additional discussion of multinational operations.)

SECTION III – MILITARY POLICE FORCE TAILORING

2-71. Within the Army, the organization of forces is dynamic at all levels. Army forces are organized and reorganized continuously to meet mission requirements. Actual requirements for forces in an operation are seldom identical to planning estimates. As a consequence, the theater Army commander recommends the appropriate mix of forces and the deployment sequence for forces to meet the geographic combatant commander's actual requirements. This is force tailoring (selecting forces based on a mission and recommending their deployment sequence) and may include operational Army and force generating elements.

2-72. Tailoring the military police force requires an adjusted mind-set—one that thinks in terms completely divested from how the force is organized in garrison. It requires a leader's mind-set that thinks beyond home station structures to embrace combinations of military police capabilities and mission command to provide each echelon of the force with the right support. While the Military Police Corps Regiment is organized and equipped to support unified land operations, military police can expect serious challenges in the operational environment when trying to execute the broad range of potential tasks. Careful prioritization must occur for the limited military police resources typical in the operational environment to be effective. To accomplish all identified tasks in the desired timeframes, commanders must consider augmentation requirements and recognize which mission requirements can be supported through reachback rather than enlarging the military police footprint in the area of operations. Within the operational framework, military police units are more narrowly designed to accomplish specific types of tasks. Therefore, it is imperative that when tailoring the military police force, the broad range of needed capabilities is allocated from the military police force pool.

2-73. Military police force packages must contain the right mix of capabilities to ensure timely and relevant military police support to the joint force commander. This mix will need to change during transitions, and the joint force military police must anticipate and plan for these changes. For example, military police battalions and companies often make up the majority of military police forces in-theater during sustained combat operations; however, as a larger percentage of the mission set transitions to stability, military police battalions and companies typically need augmentation to provide the required capabilities to accomplish tasks associated with extensive stability. Force mix analysis must take into consideration detention operations requirements, criminal investigation needs, assets to confine U.S. military prisoners accused of Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ) violations, and other military police tasks that receive less visibility under combat operations.

2-74. Tailoring the military police force should not be confused with task organizing. Tactical and operational commanders organize groups of units for specific missions and reorganize for subsequent missions when necessary. This process of allocating available assets to subordinate commanders and establishing their command and support relationships is called *task organizing*. Following the specific mission, the task-organized units revert back to the original mission command relationships or are again task-organized for a follow-on mission or period. Considerations for task-organizing military police units are discussed in chapter 4.

FORCE ORGANIZATION

2-75. The joint force commander is able to draw from a force pool of military police units available for integration into joint forces at various echelons. This structure enables expeditionary action and the flexible tailoring of military police forces to meet changing situations.

MULTIFUNCTIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

2-76. Mission command for military police capabilities and missions is primarily provided by the military police command, the military police brigade, and the military police battalion. Multifunctional units at brigade and battalion echelons (MEB, BSTB) may also provide mission command for military police forces in cases where military police support is integral to the multifunctional mission. This section briefly describes the BSTB and the MEB. An analysis of operational variables establishes the suitable tailoring of functional and multifunctional headquarters, while mission variables are analyzed to determine task organization.

2-77. The division construct normally starts with an MEB and then adds a functional military police brigade when the type (technical requirement), or size (magnitude of subordinate military police elements) of the military police mission or the requirement to integrate military police capabilities across the force becomes too large for the MEB. The corps level normally starts with at least a military police brigade and expands to other military police brigades as necessary. In some instances, an MEB may also be required at the corps level; for example, to provide mission command for a seaport of debarkation or an aerial port of debarkation (both missions are terrain-focused) during early-entry operations or to support a movement corridor within a corps area of operations. The MEB provides multifunctional capability with a smaller footprint and has the ability to control terrain for these types of operations.

Brigade Special Troops Battalion

2-78. The BSTB is a multifunctional battalion within the IBCT, ABCT, and SBCT. The BSTB will typically provide the mission command oversight of military police capabilities. Each BCT should plan for the task organization of at least one military police company during major combat operations and stability. (See FM 3-90.61 for additional information on the BSTB.)

Maneuver Enhancement Brigade

2-79. The MEB is designed as a mission command headquarters with a robust multifunctional brigade staff that is optimized to conduct maneuver support operations. *Maneuver support operations* integrate the complementary and reinforcing capabilities of key protection, movement and maneuver, and sustainment functions, tasks, and systems to enhance freedom of action. (FM 3-90.31) The MEB contains no organic units other than its headquarters and headquarters company, network support company, and brigade support battalion. The staff includes functional operations and planning cells (military police; chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives [CBRNE]; and engineer). The staff also includes a fires cell, an area operations section, and an airspace management section that support the capability of the MEB to be assigned to an area of operations. Each MEB is uniquely tailored with augmentation for its directed mission. An MEB typically includes a mix of several types of battalions and separate companies that may include civil affairs, CBRN, engineer, explosive ordnance disposal, and military police units. It may also contain other units, to include MI assets and a tactical operating force when assigned to an area of operations with a Level III threat. In certain circumstances, the MEB may also include air and missile defense units. The number of MEBs supporting a headquarters depends on the mission variables and the critical considerations of span of control and functional area focus. A joint force commander may place an MEB in support of another Service component, such as a Marine expeditionary force. An MEB may also be placed in support of multinational forces. (See FM 3-90.31 for additional information on the MEB.)

HIGHER-ECHELON HEADQUARTERS

2-80. Command headquarters above the BCT consist of divisions, corps, and theater Army headquarters. The division is optimized for the tactical control of brigades during ground combat operations. The corps provides a headquarters that specializes in operations as a joint force land component command headquarters or may be employed as an intermediate tactical headquarters. The theater Army headquarters serves as the Army Service component commander with administrative control over Army forces and some theater-wide planning and controlling support to joint forces. The Army Service component commander focuses at geographic combatant command level land power employment and support to joint, interagency,

and multinational forces. All three headquarters are modular entities designed to employ expeditionary forces tailored to meet the requirements of specified joint operations.

Division

2-81. Divisions can typically control up to six BCTs during offensive and defensive tasks and more than six BCTs in protracted stability tasks. A division force package may include any mix of ABCTs, IBCTs, and SBCTs. In addition to BCTs, each division controls a tailored array of support brigades and functional brigades. They may also control functional groups, battalions, or separate companies; however, these are normally task-organized to a brigade. Each division is tailored for a specific operation; the composition of the division is completely variable. Figure 2-1 provides a notional organization for a division conducting offensive tasks with an MEB in support and a division tailored for stability with a military police brigade headquarters and an MEB in support.
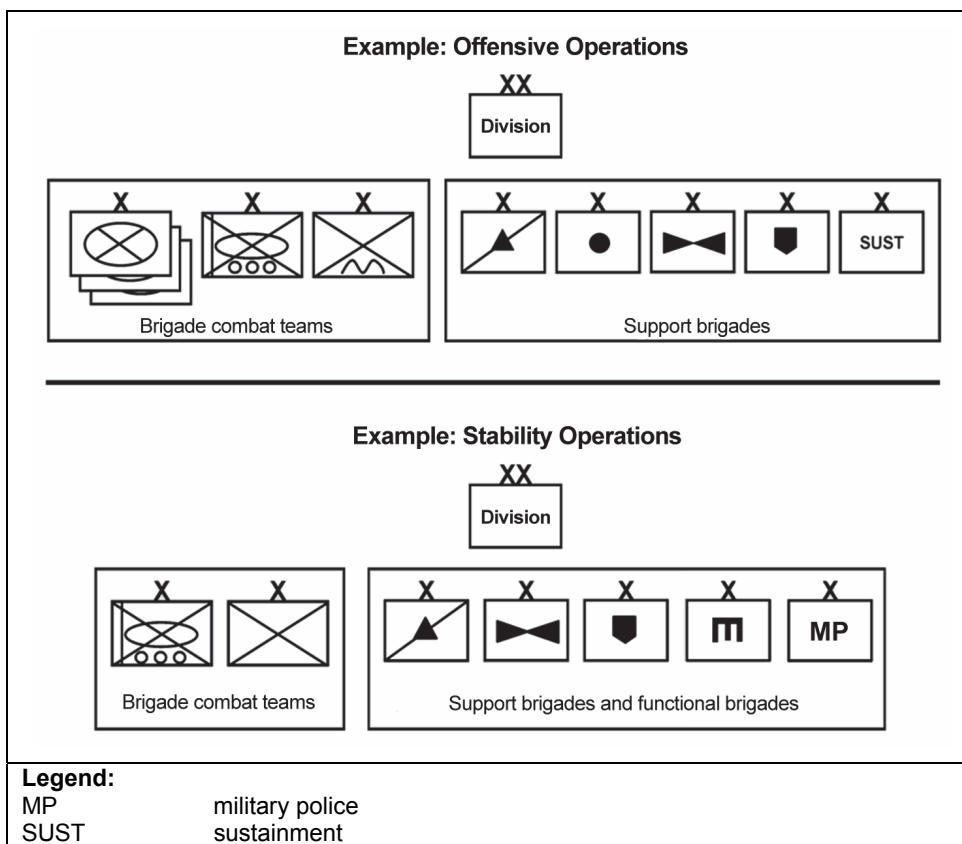

Figure 2-1. Notional examples of tailored divisions

2-82. The tailored military police force supporting a division is not set by rules of allocation. Rather, the force is tailored to meet anticipated requirements based on an analysis of the situation. The divisional military police force may be organized under a multifunctional headquarters, such as the MEB, or under a functional military police headquarters. While a military police battalion, military police brigade, or multifunctional headquarters may be allocated as the divisional military police headquarters, a battalion echelon headquarters or the MEB is typical for most operations. A military police brigade may be required for special situations. (See figure 2-2.)

2-83. Typically, when the division is tailored with an MEB, military police assets allocated to the division will be organized within the MEB for mission command. In some situations, the division may require a combination of military police forces organized functionally and multifunctionally. A functional military police brigade may be tailored as a division echelon headquarters. A military police brigade is allocated to a division headquarters, in addition to an MEB, based on an analysis of mission variables and a

determination that the division requires significantly increased military police mission command capability to conduct functional military police missions (see figure 2-1). Another primary consideration for task-organizing a functional military police brigade at the division level is a division requirement for the capability to integrate and synchronize military police capabilities uniformly across the entire division area of operations. A primary example is in stability tasks where an MEB assigned to the division is given an area of operations to control; and large-scale, host nation police support is required to be consistently applied and synchronized across the division area of operations.
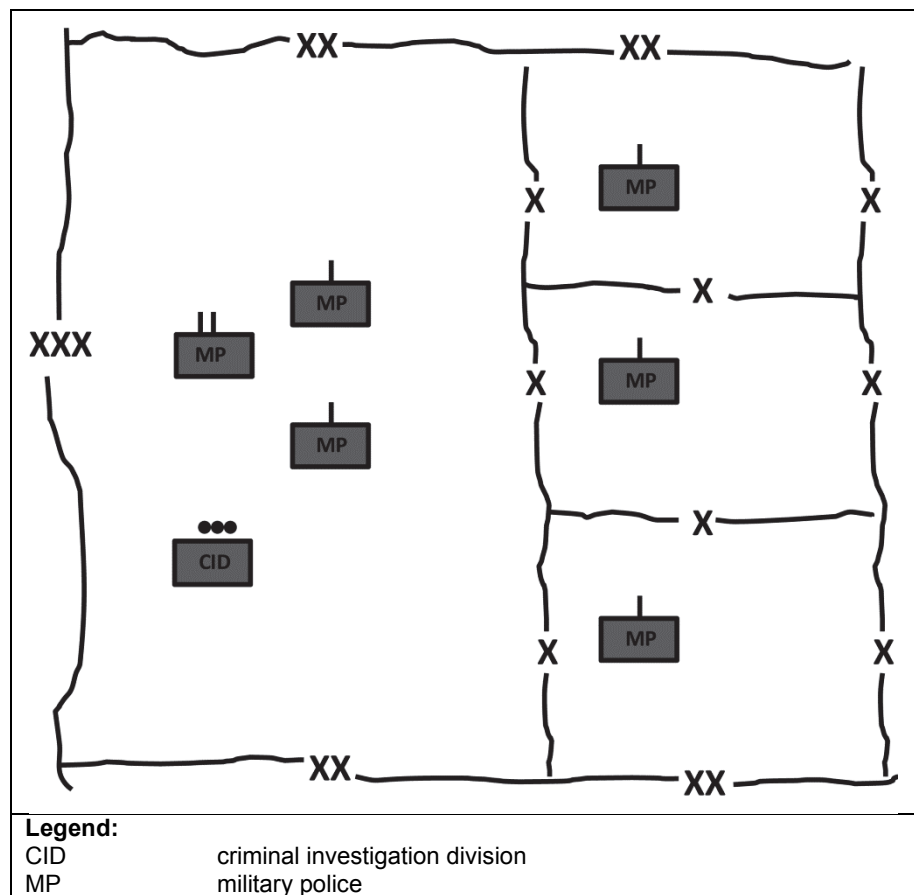

Figure 2-2. Notional military police support to a division

2-84. A military police brigade is provided to a division or higher organization when the magnitude of functional military police requirements exceeds the limited capability of the MEB to provide functional military police mission command. In these instances, military police brigade level mission command capability is required to appropriately allocate, synchronize, control, and provide technical oversight for military police assets and to provide the consistent application of military police capabilities across the area of operations. Typically, if requirements for military police capabilities within the division exceed two battalions, military police brigade mission command capability will be required.

Corps

2-85. The corps is optimized to serve as an intermediate tactical headquarters for land operations. With augmentation, it may serve as an Army force headquarters, a joint task force headquarters, and a joint force land component headquarters (see figure 2-3, page 2-20). A corps can deploy to any area of responsibility to provide mission command for Army, joint, and multinational forces. Although a military police command is not shown in this example, in certain situations a corps may require one. The corps force is likely to include a joint military police headquarters or joint military police elements organized under a

multicomponent headquarters. Typically, a military police brigade headquarters will be allocated to a corps for most operations. Figure 2-3, page 2-20, provides a notional organization for a military police brigade headquarters and a joint military police headquarters supporting a corps.
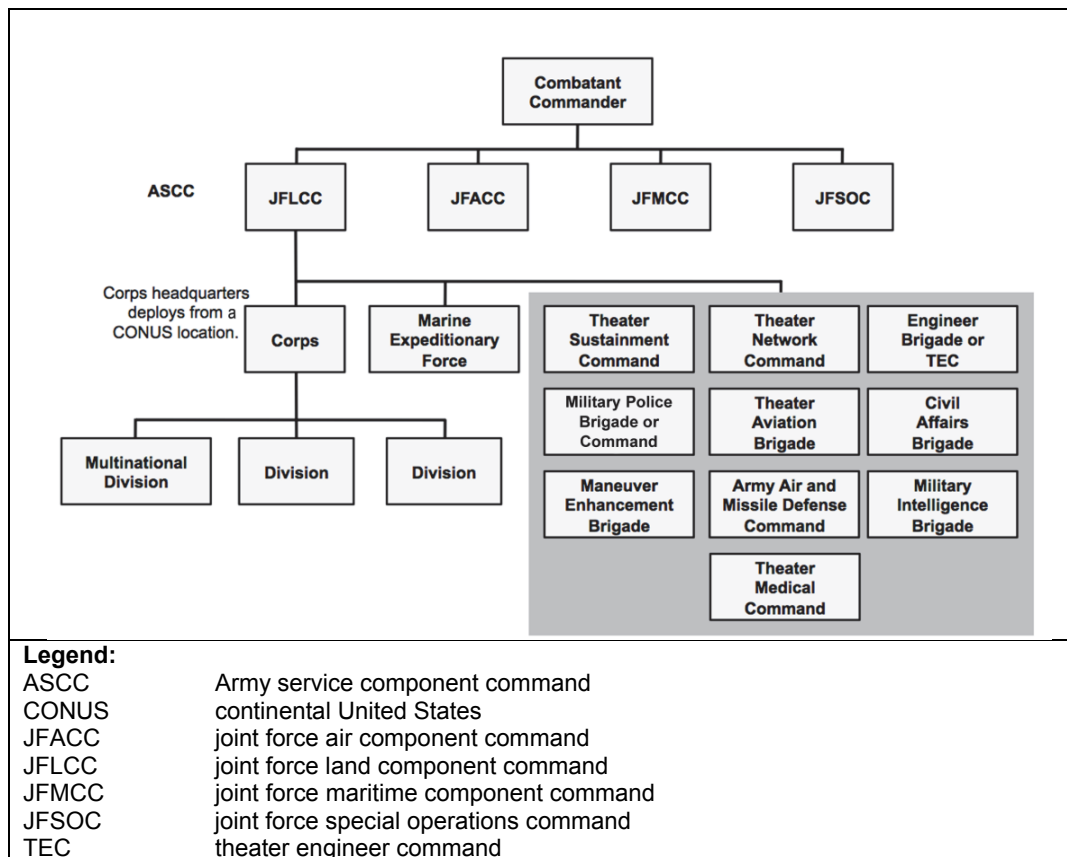

Figure 2-3. Corps as an intermediate land force headquarters

2-86. Like the division, the tailored military police force supporting a corps is not set by rules of allocation. Rather, the force is tailored to meet anticipated requirements based on an analysis of the situation. The military police brigade headquarters focuses training on support to corps and echelon-above-corps operations. The military police brigade is capable of providing effective mission command of military police operations for contingencies in which a corps headquarters is required and is the most likely military police headquarters to be tailored for a corps echelon. For most operations, the corps echelon will typically require the early or phased deployment of at least one military police brigade headquarters to provide for integrated and synchronized military police capability across the area of operations. Stability or DSCA may require the deployment of multiple military police brigades in support of a corps headquarters. (See figure 2-4.)
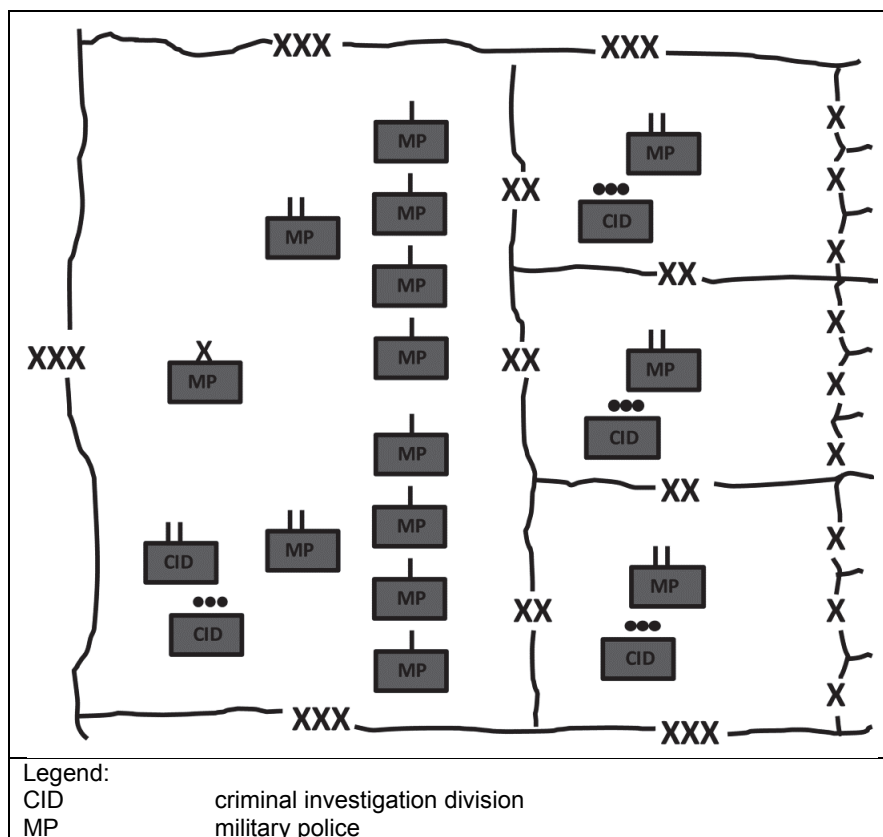
Figure 2-4. Notional military police support to a corps

Theater

2-87. The theater Army controls an assigned mix of regionally focused, supporting commands and brigades, including sustainment, signal, intelligence, civil affairs, and medical. In addition to these regionally focused commands, the theater Army receives additional attachments in the form of brigades and commands requisite for operations in the area of operations. These latter forces are not regionally focused; they are drawn from the "pool" of available forces assigned to general warfighting and maintained in the continental U.S. (CONUS) and around the world. The situation in each theater dictates the size of these formations—commands, brigades, or groups. Command relationships also vary across theaters between the theater Army and supporting capabilities. In some theaters, the commands are assigned; in others, commands are operationally controlled or aligned for planning only.

2-88. The theater Army normally receives one military police command when more than one military police brigade is required (see figure 2-6, page 2-22). The military police command is a modular organization that can be tailored based on mission requirements. Within the military police command are two deployable command posts that provide flexibility and rotational capability. It can deploy its main command post and two deployable command posts. The deployable command post can be augmented with other policing assets from a variety of sources. Capabilities that may be included with this augmentation are contracting, real estate support, and interagency coordination capability. The military police command is able to leverage reachback capabilities to capitalize on CONUS-based assets. If a military police command is not deployed in support of a theater Army, a military police brigade can provide expertise and capability similar to the military police command, but at a reduced level.
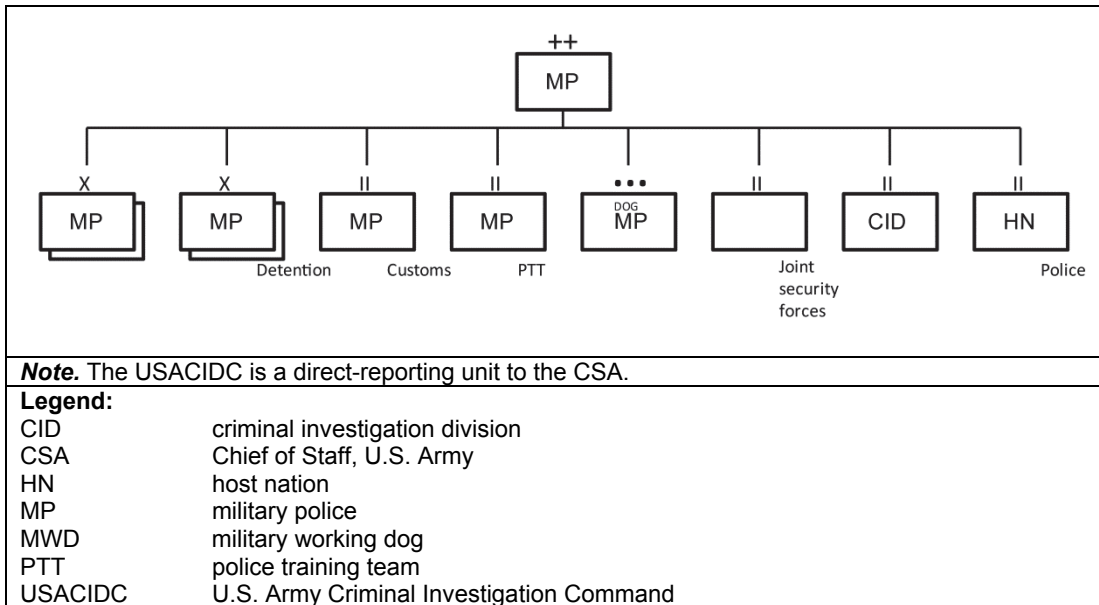
Note. The USACIDC is a direct-reporting unit to the CSA.

Legend:
CID   criminal investigation division
CSA   Chief of Staff, U.S. Army
HN   host nation
MP   military police
MWD   military working dog
PTT   police training team
USACIDC   U.S. Army Criminal Investigation Command

Figure 2-5. Notional theater military police command

2-89. The military police command provides mission command and an organizational framework for the operational-level military police effort within the area of responsibility. Non-military police organizations may be task-organized to the military police command to perform specific missions. The military police command focuses on reinforcing and augmenting tactical-level military police efforts and developing the theater detention or resettlement operations base requirements. The commander of the military police command also serves as the commander of detainee operations. (See figure 2-7.)
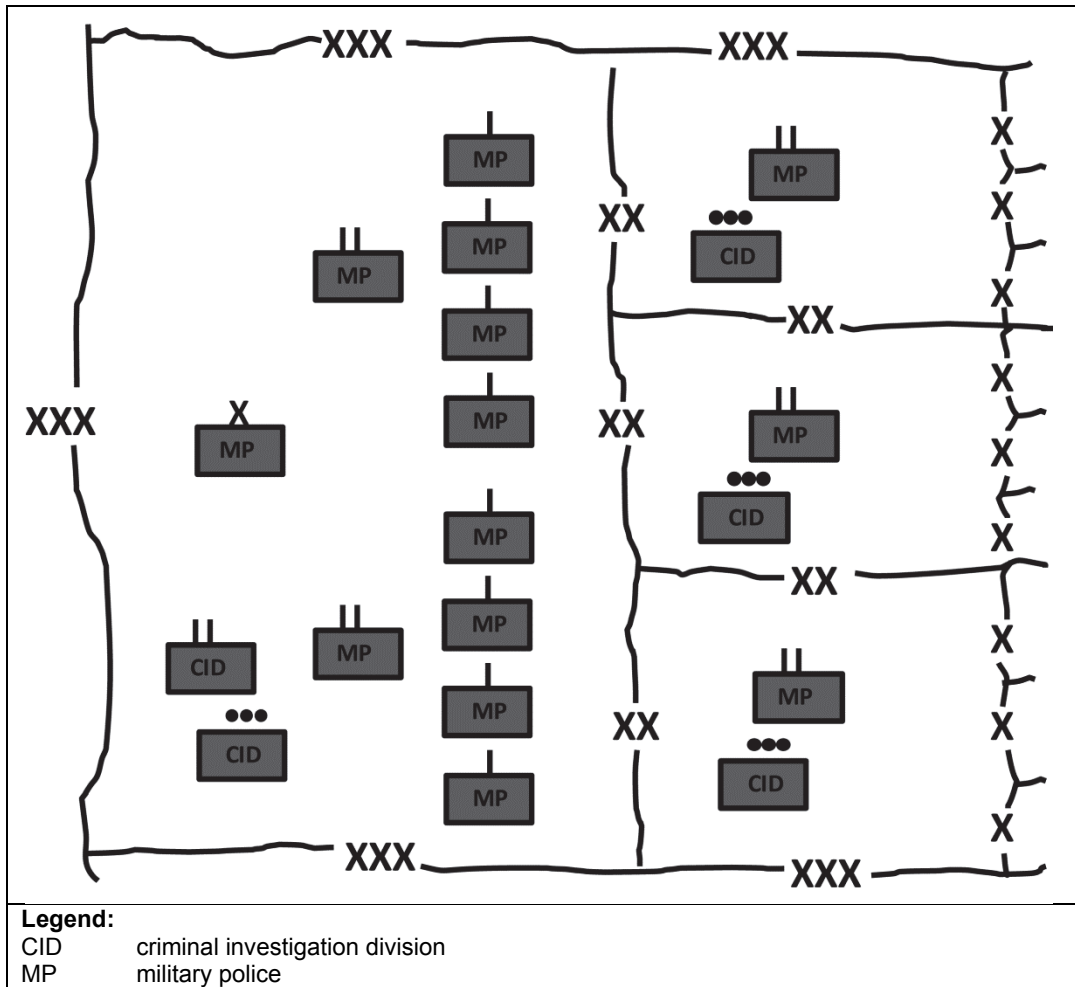
Figure 2-6. Notional military police support to a theater

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 3

Foundations of Military Police Operations

ADP 3-0 describes decisive action as a continuous, simultaneous combination of offensive, defensive, and stability or DSCA operations and it begins with the commander's intent and concept of operations. As a single, unifying idea, decisive action provides direction for the entire operation. Army forces conduct decisive action as part of the larger joint operations framework. Such operations require flexibly applying combat power to complex environments by executing simultaneous combinations of all tasks of decisive action. This chapter describes the foundations necessary for effective military police operations. It defines the military police disciplines that broadly categorize the array of military police technical capabilities and tactical task and enables clear linkages from those capabilities and task to the warfighting functions.

MILITARY POLICE FUNCTIONAL ORGANIZATIONS

3-1.   Military police units perform critical requirements identified in the Universal Joint Task List and the Army Universal Task List. The capabilities inherent in military police organizations provide a significant force enabler to other Army organization and unified-action partners across the range of military operations. While military police capabilities are sought for nearly all operations, it is in stability and DSCA that military police capabilities become much more visible. Military police units facilitate the freedom of maneuver and mobility necessary to meet mission objectives and provide focused protection to high-risk personnel, equipment, and facilities. Military police units and Soldiers are especially well suited for conducting security force assistance and providing support to policing and corrections. In doing so, they enable the mobility of friendly forces and enhance the basic level of protection. Military police operations also enable the sustainment of friendly forces; contribute to a clear understanding of the policing and corrections environment; and provide support to noncombatants, and other unified-action partners.

3-2.   Military police disciplines are interdependent areas of expertise within the Military Police Corps that are grouped together to provide an organizational framework of military police technical capabilities and tactical tasks. A review of current Universal Joint Task List and Army Universal Task List tasks, warfighting gap analysis, and lessons learned from recent operational experiences has established three critical disciplines that military police units and Soldiers perform in support of decisive action. The three military police disciplines (police operations, detention, and security and mobility support), as shown in table 3-1, page 3-2, are listed with major technical capabilities and tactical tasks aligned beneath the corresponding discipline. The list of capabilities and tasks displayed is not an all-inclusive list of military police tasks.

3-3.   Police intelligence operations is the military police corps integrated function. Police intelligence operations support commanders at all levels through the integration of police intelligence activities within all military police operations. Police intelligence operations enable military police and USACIDC staff and police intelligence analysts to identify connections and correlations between people, locations, events, times, and things, allowing for the identification of trends, patterns, and associations pertinent to activity and organizational structures that facilitate criminal behavior. Police intelligence tasks are identified in table 3-2, page 3-2.

Table 3-1. Military police disciplines and technical capabilities and tactical task

	Military Police Disciplines		
	Police Operations	**Detention Operations**	**Security and Mobility Support**
Technical Capabilities and Tactical Tasks	Perform law enforcement.	Confine U.S. military prisoners.	Conduct movement support to mobility operations.
	Conduct traffic management and enforcement .	Conduct detainee operations.	Develop traffic regulation and enforcement plan.
	Conduct criminal investigations.	Conduct host nation corrections training and support.	Conduct enforcement of main supply route regulations.
	Provide customs support.		Conduct a route reconnaissance.
	Restore and maintain order.		Control movement of dislocated civilians.
	Support border control, boundary security, and the freedom of movement.		Conduct resettlement operations.
	Enable an interim Criminal Justice System.		Control movement of dislocated civilians.
	Conduct host nation police training and support.		Conduct population and resource control.
	Provide support to civil law enforcement.		Conduct reconnaissance.
	Conduct police engagement.		Conduct surveillance.
	Employ forensic analysis or biometric identification capabilities.		Conduct operational area security .
	Provide and evidence response team.		Conduct base/base camp defense.
	Provide straggler movement control.		Conduct critical asset security.
			Provide protective service for selected individuals.
			Conduct response force operations.
			Secure lines of communication, supply routes and convoys.
			Perform port and pier security.
			Perform support area damage control.
			Apply antiterrorism measures.
			Implement physical security procedures.
			Perform logistics security.
			Perform crime prevention.
			Provide military working dogs.

Table 3-2. Military police integrated function

	Police Intelligence Operations
Technical Capabilities and Tactical Task	Provide support to situational understanding
	Collect police information
	Conduct police information analysis
	Develop police intelligence products

MILITARY POLICE DISCIPLINES

3-4. Military police units provide support to each of the warfighting functions while performing their three disciplines as a flexible, versatile, lethal, and nonlethal economy-of-force organization. Through these disciplines, military police units are able to provide commanders with an array of tailorable and focused capabilities across the range of military operations. Military police headquarters cannot generally conduct all three military police disciplines at the same level of priority; therefore, commanders must anticipate, prioritize, and synchronize the employment of military police assets. The echelon provost marshal and staff make priority recommendations in the planning process during war-gaming based on the commander's guidance and the mission variables. Each provost marshal works closely with supported commanders to ensure that military police support is responsive and appropriate to the commanders' concept of the operation and to finalize command and support relationships.

POLICE OPERATIONS

3-5. Police operations are the primary discipline of military police shaping the actions and perspective of military police Soldiers and leaders in the conduct and execution of the other disciplines. Police operations encompass the associated law enforcement activities to control and protect populations and resources to facilitate the existence of a lawful and orderly environment. Police operations and the associated skills and capabilities inherent in that function provide the fundamental base on which all other military police functions are framed and conducted. Military police conduct police operations—

- To maintain good order and discipline. This application of the police operations discipline is focused internally at policing our own Soldiers and civilians and deterring, mitigating, and preventing criminal and terrorist threats. This application is the heart of the military police motto of "assist, protect, and defend." It is most prevalent at posts, camps, and stations but is also necessary on base camps in mature theaters.
- To establish and maintain civil security and civil control while enabling the rule of law. This application of the police operations discipline is focused externally at policing the local population in an operational environment where host nation policing and security capability are nonexistent or inadequate. The goal of any police operation within a host nation is to enable the rule of law and to eventually transition all policing functions to host nation control.
- During times of crisis in DSCA. National Guard military police elements regularly support their respective state governors in this function while operating as state assets under 32 U.S. Code (USC). U.S. Army Reserve and active duty military police elements, including federalized National Guard Soldiers, are generally prohibited from direct participation in law enforcement. (Chapter 5 contains a more detailed discussion of military police roles and restrictions during DSCA.)

3-6. Within the military community, the police operations discipline is an enabler of the commander's inherent responsibility to maintain order and discipline within the ranks of their formation. This is the most visible application of the police operations discipline to most Army personnel and includes law enforcement in support of bases and base camps. It is through the execution of garrison law enforcement that military police gain critical interpersonal skills and technical policing and investigative capabilities critical to police operations in any operational environment. Outside of U.S. territory, military police execute the police operations to establish or preserve civil security, civil control, and the rule of law within the host nation. In many operations, especially following major combat operations or disasters in which host nation capabilities have been destroyed or rendered ineffective, establishing civil security and civil control are critical to gaining a stable and secure environment. Military police execute the police operations discipline early in these operations to set conditions for the successful transition to stability and the eventual transfer of authority to host nation police and security elements. As stability becomes the dominant operation in an operational environment, the focused demand for military police capabilities generally transitions from primarily security and mobility support to police operations. Stability typically produces the highest magnitude of requirements for police operations within the context of the range of military operations.

3-7. Military police and USACIDC units work to reduce the opportunity for criminal activity throughout an area of operations by assessing the local conditions, conducting police engagement at all levels

(including coordinating and maintaining liaison with other DOD, host nation, joint, and multinational agencies), and developing coherent policing strategies. Military police units at all levels coordinate actions to identify and influence crime-conducive conditions. Military police support and develop strategies to maintain order and enforce the rule of law across the range of military operations. The police operations discipline also includes major areas such as law enforcement, traffic operations, criminal investigations, host nation police training and support, and U.S. customs operations support. Police operations are addressed under the protection warfighting functions (see ADRP 3-37 and ATTP 3-39.10).

Law Enforcement

3-8.   Law enforcement assists the commander in maintaining order and discipline in the ranks and in preserving the force. Military police units dedicate assets to conduct law enforcement based on command guidance and the characteristics of the operational environment. Military police are only one of many enforcement mechanisms that commanders can use to enforce rules and regulations and to enable the rule of law. Commanders rely on leadership, professional development programs, sound physical security, crime prevention programs, inquiries, investigations, and searches to gain the compliance of troops, thus allowing military police to selectively focus their law enforcement efforts on the most significant enforcement requirements. Law enforcement includes responding to civil disturbances; conducting raids; employing special-reaction teams, MWD teams, and marksman/observer teams, investigating traffic accidents; conducting vehicle searches; supporting the commander's protection program; and providing support to host nation and civil law enforcement agencies.

3-9.   In multinational operations, military police may assist with the creation of multinational police units and training. Circumstances that may support the establishment of these police forces include existing or negotiated terms of international agreements or security assistance programs, a multinational operational agreement, or appropriate military directives. Military police units provide the capability to train foreign military or civilian personnel and/or reconstitute indigenous constabulary forces. Military police may be required to provide interim law enforcement capability until that capability can be established within the host nation. Military police can also provide the initial mentoring to these forces and temporary law enforcement capabilities until the foreign military or civilian police forces are functional. Ideally, military police will assist U.S. and civilian multinational police agencies in these efforts; however, the security environment, availability of police personnel, and political considerations may make the employment of civilian police agencies impractical. In these cases, military police are capable of assuming the mission until civilian police agencies can assist or until the host nation can assume responsibility.

Traffic Operations

3-10. Traffic management and enforcement activities encompass a technical law enforcement specialty that includes the control of traffic circulation, enforcement of traffic regulations, and investigation of traffic accidents. Many of the skills and capabilities involved in traffic management and enforcement are equally relevant in support of posts, camps, stations, and decisive action. Traffic management and enforcement planning and execution is a routine function based on recurring, predictable events or special events or an effort to control traffic flow, protect civilian and military personnel and equipment, and mitigate the effects of traffic congestion. Traffic management and enforcement is critical in mitigating disruptions following an unforeseen incident, major accident, or disaster. (See ATTP 3-39.10 for additional information on traffic management).

3-11. Law enforcement personnel trained in traffic management and enforcement activities provide expertise in conducting traffic surveys to assess traffic patterns and traffic flow, enhancing the safety of the military and civilian community. Military police with expertise in traffic management and enforcement work closely with engineers to design roadways, intersections, entry control points and access control points, and other areas required to accommodate significant vehicular traffic flow. The enforcement of traffic regulations ensures that the roadways are negotiated by vehicles in a safe and orderly manner, protecting vehicular traffic, pedestrians, and personnel operating in the vicinity of roadways and areas of vehicular traffic. Specially trained traffic accident investigators provide expertise specific to reconstructing traffic accidents in the aftermath of accidents.

Criminal Investigations

3-12. Military police and USACIDC units investigate offenses against U.S. forces or property committed in an area of operations. All military police Soldiers are trained to conduct initial investigations. Specially trained military police investigators and USACIDC special agents conduct most formal criminal investigations within the Army. These investigators are trained in technical investigation techniques, to include evidence identification, processing, and preservation critical to successful criminal investigations. Investigations of minor crimes, such as low-value, personal property thefts or simple assaults, are normally investigated and processed by military police investigators assigned to military police law enforcement detachments or tactical units. Investigations of felony-related crimes involving wrongful death, serious bodily injury, and war crimes are referred to USACIDC special agents. These special agents conduct death investigations in the absence of host nation agreements or in conjunction with the host nation. The special agents are authorized to investigate any alleged criminal conduct in which there is an Army interest, unless prohibited by law or higher authority (see chapter 7).

3-13. The investigative authority and investigative responsibility of USACIDC OCONUS are determined by international treaty or agreement, including status of forces agreements, the policies of the host nation government (if viable), the U.S. ambassador, and AR 195-2. In the absence of such provisions, the following guidelines apply:

- On Army-controlled bases or base camps with deployed areas of operations, the USACIDC has the authority to investigate alleged crimes.
- Outside of an Army-controlled base or base camp, the USACIDC may investigate after coordinating with host nation authorities.

3-14. In all environments, the USACIDC has the responsibility to investigate all felony crimes involving Army personnel, DA civilians and agencies, and companies working for the Army. The USACIDC investigates war crimes and crimes that involve personal and government property that affect the Army mission and logistics security. Other investigations—such as those based on international treaties, status of forces agreements, and joint investigations with the host nation—may be undertaken if requested by the supported commander in support of the overall Army mission.

U.S. Customs Operations Support

3-15. Military police units support the U.S. Customs and Border Protection, the U.S. Department of Agriculture, other federal agencies, joint staffs, and commanders who enforce the laws and regulations of the United States concerning customs, agriculture, and immigration border clearances. The ultimate goal is to prevent hazards and threats from entering the homeland. Support to the U.S. Customs and Border Protection includes assistance to federal agencies to eliminate the illegal traffic of controlled substances and other contraband through Army channels. Military police support to customs operations is normally performed by military police trained in U.S. Customs and Border Protection. These military police are not trained in all facets of customs operations, but they assist the U.S. Customs and Border Protection, the U.S. Department of Agriculture, and other federal agencies in the enforcement of applicable laws and regulations. When tasked, the USACIDC and other military police elements support the investigation of violations of U.S. Codes, DOD or DA regulations, and applicable provisions of status-of-forces agreements.

3-16. Customs-trained military police report violations of customs laws, regulations, and inspections and investigative results to the installation provost marshal, the supported commander, and affected units. During redeployment from OCONUS to CONUS bases and base camps, customs-trained military police support the U.S. Customs and Border Protection and U.S. Department of Agriculture efforts to ensure that personnel, equipment, and material meet customs, immigration, and agriculture requirements in all applicable laws and regulations. As with other functions, MWD teams may be employed in support of customs operations for the detection of explosives or narcotics.

Support to Civil Security and Civil Control

3-17. Civil security involves providing for the safety of the state and its population, including protection from internal and external threats (see FM 3-07). It includes a diverse set of activities, ranging from

enforcing peace agreements to executing disarmament, demobilization, and reintegration. Civil security must be achieved for other stability lines of effort to be successful. Establishing a safe, secure, stable, and professional environment shapes the environment and enables a transition toward normalcy. A secure environment is key to gaining support from the local population.

3-18. Establishing civil control is a critical step toward instituting the rule of law and enabling stable and effective governance. Civil control, with its emphasis on governance and the rule of law, is required for successful stability tasks and the transfer of authority to a host nation government. The operational environment may be threatened by insurgents, subversive elements within the population, organized crime, or a state of general lawlessness. These threats are obstacles to a secure, stable peace and can prevent successful efforts to establish a lawful and orderly environment. Civil control centers on the establishment of the rule of law and efforts to build a functioning host nation civil authority triad (judiciary, police, and corrections). It encompasses the key institutions necessary for a functioning justice system, including police, investigative services, prosecutorial arm, public defense, and prisons.

Restore and Maintain Order

3-19. Establishing civil security and civil control requires initial actions to restore order in a chaotic and potentially lawless environment. In most operational environments requiring U.S. forces to establish civil security, the rule of law has failed or was never in place. U.S. forces, to include military police, must establish and then maintain a secure environment, enabling civil control lines of effort and the rule of law to be established. Restoring and maintaining order may require combat operations to eliminate specific threats, disarm the population and disruptive elements, monitor and disperse crowds that become violent and destructive, and physically separate belligerents.

3-20. Operations to restore order are conducted to halt violence and to support, reinstate, or establish civil authorities. These operations provide security and stability after a conflict, while setting the conditions for transition to the rule of law. Providing effective security for the local population by reducing their exposure to the threat of violent conflict is critical to enabling a stable environment for continued stability tasks and reconstruction. Military police are uniquely equipped to engage in operations to establish civil order. Military police Soldiers are trained and experienced in graduated-response techniques and the application of the minimal force necessary to control a situation. In operational environments that are precariously between major conflict and instability, the ability to gain control of a potentially violent event, establish order, and disperse the population without resorting to the significant application of force can make a significant impact. Successful efforts to establish order with minimal violence ease the transition from instability toward stable peace and enable the establishment of effective governance under the rule of law.

Support Border Control, Boundary Security, and Freedom of Movement

3-21. Civil security is threatened if the state cannot control the flow of persons and materiel across its borders and throughout the country. The ability to monitor and regulate its borders is critical. When host nation border control is ineffective or nonexistent, U.S. forces may be required to conduct border control operations, to include patrolling the areas near the border, specifically in the vicinity of formal and informal crossing sites. ADRP 3-07 contains additional information regarding border control, boundary security, and freedom of movement.

3-22. Military police provide relevant capabilities to enhance border operations. Military police units are trained in access control and physical security measures that support border checkpoint operations. Military police customs personnel can transfer their experience supporting U.S. customs operations to supporting host nation customs requirements at entry points and other checkpoints as required. The MWDs provide the capability to detect contraband being smuggled across state boundaries. Military police units can provide law enforcement expertise and work closely with host nation border personnel, providing training and assistance until the host nation is capable of assuming full authority. Successful border control operations include the—

- Integration of border control and customs efforts.
- Efficient, regulated movement of personnel, vehicles, materiel, and goods.
- Cooperative efforts with adjacent state border agencies.

- Detection of—
    - Illegal trafficking across borders.
    - Organized criminal networks.
    - Movement of irregular forces.
    - Terrorist activities and movements.
    - Other threats to the host nation.

Establish an Interim Criminal Justice System

3-23. Army forces may be required to assist in establishing an interim justice system as a prerequisite to the restoration of effective governance. Establishing an interim criminal justice system under the rule of law requires a wide range of skilled professionals, including judges, prosecutors, court administrators, corrections personnel, law enforcement personnel, and investigators. The civil authority triad consists of police, prisons, and a judicial system. This triad provides the foundation on which the criminal justice system is built. Military police provide specific capabilities that are pertinent to two of the three legs of the civil authority triad—police and prisons—necessary for a functioning criminal justice system that operates under the rule of law. (See FM 1-04 for information regarding legal support to Army operations.)

3-24. Military police units are specifically trained to support law enforcement and corrections missions within their police operations and detention operations disciplines. Military police maintain the capability to conduct law enforcement activities, including police patrols, traffic management and enforcement, MWD, police station operations, and police administrative support task. The USACIDC provides extensive criminal investigative capabilities and forensics capabilities that are comparable to civilian law enforcement agencies.. Military police also have military police investigators with criminal investigations training. Military police investigators and USACIDC special agents can be deployed in support of rule-of-law missions, to include training host nation police personnel.

3-25. As the operational environment transitions from one dominated by combat operations to a more stable environment dominated by the rule of law, military police organizations can provide valuable policing and technical law enforcement and investigative capabilities. Military police elements ranging from the provost marshal office and military police platoons within the BCT to military police battalions and brigades supporting divisions and corps provide a wide range of law enforcement-related skills and techniques, ranging from handling evidence during site exploitation to more sophisticated methods of investigating complex crimes. Military police are capable of training and mentoring host nation police and providing expertise to U.S. troops who are conducting security operations. Support to U.S. military units may include conducting police tasks within restricted rules of engagement; conducting police-oriented, inform and influence activities with the population; and collecting and preserving evidence. These capabilities are increasingly important as the host nation transitions to the rule of law and begins criminalizing and prosecuting activities of insurgent threat elements.

Host Nation Police Training and Support

3-26. In the event that U.S. forces are deployed to an area of operations with a limited or failed police system, military police forces may be required to initially perform police duties to establish or maintain a secure environment. In the long term, it is critically important to establish host nation police forces to assume law enforcement duties as soon as possible. The United States, multinational partners, and the host nation should institute a comprehensive program of police force development. U.S. military police units serve best when operating as a support force for professional civilian and host nation police trainers. However, there may be times when military police units or Soldiers are given the primary responsibility for police training and they must be prepared to assume that role if required.

3-27. Military police units are skilled at providing police development and transition teams to train host nation police personnel in basic and advanced law enforcement skills, investigations, police station operations, and senior police leader skills. Military police are also capable of providing specialty training in functional course areas, such as counterdrug operations, evidence collection, or advanced investigative techniques based on local needs. Police development and transition teams may also serve in an advisory

role to assist in the transition of responsibility for domestic security to the host nation police to provide a safe and secure environment.

3-28. Host nation police training may be simultaneously conducted from the most senior administrative levels to the ground level police patrols. The conduct of an effective host nation police training program requires consistency and synchronization in the application of training, policy directives, and logistics support. Task-organizing all military police elements conducting host nation police training under a single military police mission command structure is the preferred organizational structure to enable the required consistency and synchronization across the area of operations. Effective host nation police training requires military police to—

- Assess police roles, responsibilities, structures, management, and practices.
- Determine existing and required police capabilities and capacities, to include logistics and administrative support required for police operations.
- Develop and support a police training curriculum at police training academies.
- Understand the traditional role of police within the host nation and develop training strategies to change the institutional culture of the police force, if required, to one that emphasizes public service, ethical and humane treatment, and established policing principles.
- Build intra- and interagency linkages to ensure that police activities complement the other key functions within the civil authority triad (judicial system and prison).
- Ensure that effective and consistent police training capabilities are present within the host nation police infrastructure.
- Train and develop investigative processes, including the gathering, handling, and preserving of evidence (to include maintaining a viable chain of custody) to support ongoing prosecutions.
- Enhance the ability of police services to plan and develop police intelligence analysis skills.
- Develop and strengthen policies and mechanisms for police accountability.
- Train and develop biometrics capabilities.

Support to Civil Law Enforcement

3-29. Military police Soldiers provide support to civil law enforcement within established jurisdictional and legal parameters. This starts at home station and includes local community law enforcement. USACIDC personnel and installation provost marshals and their staffs are fully integrated with local law enforcement. They share information, enabling complementary and synchronized law enforcement efforts within their respective purviews. Military police support to civil law enforcement includes—

- Supporting counterdrug operations.
- Supporting antiterrorism efforts.
- Conducting riot control.
- Providing general support to law enforcement as required.

Police Engagement

3-30. Police engagement occurs in all operational environments where police interact with elements external to their own organization. Police engagement is a type of inform and influence activity that occurs between police personnel, organizations, or populations for the purpose of maintaining social order. Military police and USACIDC personnel engage local, host nation, and coalition police partners; police agencies; civil leaders; and local populations for critical police information that can influence military operations or destabilize an area of operations. The ultimate goal of police engagement is to develop a routine and reliable interpersonal network through which police information can flow to military police. Based on the tactical situation, police engagement can be formal or informal. Police engagement may be a proactive activity as part of deliberate information gathering, targeting, or collection effort or can be conducted as a reactive response to an episodic event.

3-31. Formal police engagement is generally conducted as part of a deliberate strategy to gain support or information or to convey a message. It requires preparation, coordination, and postengagement reporting. Military police or USACIDC personnel may serve as the key communicators within a sphere of influence

that includes indigenous or multinational police leadership, or they may support a separate key communicator. It is essential that information and messages exchanged are accurate and consistent with the informational themes and the operations they represent.

3-32. Military police and USACIDC personnel employ the following engagement considerations when planning and preparing for deliberate police engagement:

- Background (purpose, decisions, and authority for engagement).
- Person (position, organization, perceived agenda, and last engagement).
- Meeting preparation (intelligence staff officer [S-2]/assistant chief of staff, intelligence [G-2]) intelligence summary and updates, current themes, political/cultural advisor advisement, gifts to exchange or expect, and rehearsal).
- Adjacent unit coordination (if area of operations is assigned to another headquarters).
- Interpreter support (rehearsal with organic interpreter).
- Uniform and equipment (appropriate for mission and location).
- Postengagement follow-up (timely summaries to S-2/operations staff officer [S-3]/G-3) and other stakeholders).

3-33. Police engagement is often less formal and occurs anytime military police interact with other police entities or populations; however, military police and USACIDC personnel maintain a deliberate focus and commitment to identifying criminal actors and networks, crime-conducive conditions, and other factors from within the criminal or police environment that can destabilize an area or threaten short- and long-term operational success. This focus of military police and USACIDC personnel during informal police engagement may reap significant information gained through passive collection techniques. The simple act of talking with the population or police partners may inadvertently reveal valuable information. Military police must be cognizant of these opportunities and ensure that this information is reported and fused with other collected information.

Biometrics and Forensics

3-34. Conflicts within present and future operational environments are much more likely to include struggles against adversaries fighting among the people versus fighting around the people. As a result, the opponent will attempt to blend into the population. Determining who the threat adversaries, adherents, and passive supporters are often depends on biometric and forensic identification tools and capabilities to distinguish friendly, adversarial, and threat forces. Biometric and forensics tools complement each other and are critical in criminal investigations for identifying individuals, establishing a person's presence at a specific location in relation to time and space, establishing a suspect's physical contact with material related to an investigation, or identifying deception indicators. These biometric and forensic capabilities are used extensively in traditional law enforcement investigations, but are also extremely relevant to incident sites and major site exploitation operations.

3-35. Biometrics is the process of recognizing an individual based on measurable anatomical, physiological, and behavioral characteristics. (JP 2-0) These characteristics are useful for tracking individuals, making positive identifications, establishing security procedures, or using as tools to detect deception based on measurable biological responses to stimulus. Biometric data can be used for protection and security efforts, contributions to biometric-enabled intelligence activities, and evidence in investigations and criminal prosecution. The following are the major types of biometric data used by police and intelligence collectors:

- **Personal identification data.** Biometric collection and identification devices use biological information (fingerprints, voiceprints, facial scans, retinal scans) to match an individual to a source database. The identity of a specific individual can be identified from the target population during screening.
- **Data that indicates source truthfulness.** Biometric devices, such as voice stress analyzers and polygraphs, are useful in determining a subject's truthfulness. The USACIDC and the U.S. Army Intelligence and Security Command maintain the only polygraph capability within the Army. The Commanding General, USACIDC, in coordination with the Army Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations and Plans, exercises overall Army staff responsibility for the DA Polygraph

Program and policy guidance with respect to using the polygraph in criminal investigations. The Deputy Chief of Staff, G-2, Department of the Army, promulgates policy on the use of polygraph and credibility assessment for intelligence and counterintelligence applications in AR 381-20.

3-36. Forensics is the application of multidisciplinary scientific processes to establish facts. The forensic functions of recognize, preserve, collect, analyze, store, and share are used to establish facts and identify connections between persons, objects, or data. Forensics is most commonly associated with evidence collected at crime scenes or incident sites, but also includes methodologies for the analysis of computers and networks, accounting, psychiatry, and other specialized fields. Forensics is typically employed to support legal proceedings that lead to criminal prosecution. Additionally, forensics analysis is used to answer commander's critical information requirements, provide situational awareness, and support other mission requirements in support of military operations.

3-37. Defense Forensic Science Center (DFSC) supports Army forensics requirements. The primary laboratory facility maintained by DFSC is stationary due to the nature of the equipment required; however, forward-deployed mobile forensics emerged as a solution to recent operational requirements to support deployed commanders. Operational developments in recent years have documented a growing demand for forensics support to deployed commanders. The DFSC provides limited mobile forensics laboratories to support commanders in the field as far forward as possible. These deployable laboratories enable DFSC to provide more timely forensic analysis across the spectrum of capabilities, including latent fingerprints, tool marks, firearms, deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), and explosive/drug chemistry.

3-38. The need for the proper handling of material from a crime scene or incident site is critical to the success of forensic examination by forensic scientists and technicians. Military police are trained to properly handle and preserve collected material, whether in the context of processing a crime scene or collecting and protecting material in support of military operations. Recent operational developments have emerged requiring all Soldiers to train on the collection and preservation of forensic evidence on the battlefield. Soldiers of many specialties beyond military police forces are now being required to understand basic evidence collection procedures to protect crime scenes and incident sites.

Evidence Response Team

3-39. An evidence response team is an ad hoc or expediently formed team of technical experts, that are mobilized to respond to a significant event requiring the collection and preservation of evidence. They will typically be manned by military police Soldiers and led by military police investigators or USACIDC special agents. Law enforcement professionals assigned to augment headquarters elements can also provide requisite expertise to lead an evidence response team. The primary focus of an evidence response team is to—

- Identify the crime scene or incident site boundaries to facilitate the protection of the scene (the actual area that may contain valuable evidence may not be obvious to untrained personnel).
- Collect and preserve physical evidence.
- Document evidence and establish the chain of custody.

DETENTION OPERATIONS

3-40. Detention involves the detainment of a population or group that poses some level of threat to military operations. Detention operations are conducted by military police to shelter, sustain, guard, protect, and account for populations (detainees or U.S. military prisoners) as a result of military or civil conflict or to facilitate criminal prosecution. The Army is the DOD executive agent for detainee operations. Additionally, the Army is the DOD executive agent for the long-term confinement of U.S. military prisoners. Detention Operations is addressed under the protection warfighting function (see ADRP 3-37).

U.S. Military Prisoner Corrections

3-41. Military police units detain, sustain, protect, and evacuate U.S. military prisoners. Whenever possible, Soldiers awaiting trial remain in their units. **A *U.S. military prisoner* is a person sentenced to confinement or death during a court-martial and ordered into confinement by a competent**

authority, whether or not the convening authority has approved the sentence. Commanders may request that a judge or military magistrate impose pretrial confinement when reasonable grounds exist to believe that the Soldier will not appear at the trial, the pretrial hearing, or the investigation or that they will engage in serious criminal misconduct. Under these pretrial confinement instances, the commander must also reasonably believe that a less severe form of restraint (such as conditions of liberty, restriction in lieu of apprehension, or apprehension) is inadequate. When these circumstances exist and other legal requirements are met, U.S. military personnel may be placed in pretrial confinement under military police direct control. Convicted military prisoners are moved as soon as possible to confinement facilities outside the area of operations.

3-42. No member of the U.S. armed forces may be placed in confinement in immediate association with a detainee who is not a member of the U.S. armed forces. A temporary confinement facility may be maintained in an area of operations only if distance or the lack of transportation requires such a facility. When military prisoners are retained in-theater, temporary field detention facilities may be established in_ theater. (For additional information, see AR 190-47.)

Detainee Operations

3-43. Military police may be tasked with detaining, interning, and confining detainees (enemy combatants, civilian internees, or retained persons). Military police formations are typically organized and staffed for conducting detainee operations in support of general war. The reality is that military operations in support of general war are generally short in duration compared to operations conducted at levels of violence less than general war; such as insurgency or unstable peace operations are normally longer in duration. An increase of counterinsurgency during stability tasks conducted among local populations requires more complex and sustainable systems, solutions, and facilities. Even during major combat operations, enemy forces often blend into the civilian population, criminals frequently escape or are released from jails and prisons, and government records are removed or destroyed. Criminals, terrorists, and other opportunists cross poorly secured borders and take personal or political advantage of the initial chaos that typically accompanies general warfare. Major belligerents may or may not join these or other elements (tribes, third world nationals, or factions) to conduct insurgent activities. The capture, detention, rehabilitation/reconciliation, and repatriation of detainees must be conducted in a manner that is consistent with the strategic end state, operational goals, and tactical realities.

3-44. Within the Army and through the geographic combatant commands, military police units are tasked with coordinating shelter, protection, accountability, and sustainment for detainees. The detention operations discipline ensures the humane treatment of all detainees and is of significant tactical and strategic importance. In any conflict involving U.S. forces, the safe and humane treatment of detainees is required by international law. Respect for individual human rights and humanitarian concerns is the basis for the Geneva Conventions and the Law of Armed Conflict, which codify the ideal that Soldiers, even in the most trying of circumstances, are bound to treat others with dignity and respect. Failure to conduct detainee operations in a humane manner and according to international law can result in significant adverse strategic impacts for the U.S. military. Military actions across the range of military operations will likely result in detainees. During major combat operations, entire units of enemy forces, separated and disorganized by the shock of intensive combat, may be captured. The magnitude of numbers places a tremendous burden on the operational Army as they divert tactical units to handle detainees. Military police units performing detention operations can preserve the combat effectiveness of the capturing unit by relieving it of the responsibility to secure and care for detainees. Military police units perform their detention operations discipline of collecting, evacuating, and securing detainees throughout the area of operations. In this process, military police units coordinate closely with MI assets to collect information that may be used in current or future operations.

3-45. Military police units support the joint force commander or the geographic combatant commander by preventing the diversion or tasking of operating forces to detainee or U.S. military prisoner operations. Tactical commanders at each echelon are responsible for screening detainees with organic or supporting legal and intelligence resources to ensure that detainees being transferred to detention forces represent a valid threat to U.S. or multinational forces or are reasonably suspected of possessing information of potential intelligence value. Transferring detainees who possess little intelligence value (or who do not present a valid threat) to detention facilities can potentially overwhelm the force detention capability and

result in the unnecessary diversion of resources (military police, engineer, intelligence, legal, and logistics [to include medical]) from supporting direct combat operations to securing, controlling, and processing detainees.

3-46. Military police task-organized to the BCT are ideally positioned to take control of detainees from the operating force in the BCT area of operations. Although these military police initially handle detainees, military police detention battalions with assigned military police detention and/or guard companies and supporting MWD teams are equipped and trained to handle this mission for the long term. A military police detention battalion is typically organized to support, safeguard, account for, guard, and provide humane treatment for up to 4,000 detainees or 1,500 U.S. military prisoners.

3-47. In major combat operations, a military police command may be deployed with its commander who is serving as the commander of detainee operations for a theater operation. In other operations, where a corps or division serves as the higher headquarters for a theater, a military police command may not be required. In that case, a military police brigade may be deployed to provide mission command for detainee operations and its commander may be designated as the commander of detainee operations.

Detainee Processing

3-48. Military police units are tasked with collecting detainees from combat units as far forward as possible. Military police who are task-organized to BCTs or a MEB may operate collection points or holding areas to temporarily secure detainees until they can be evacuated to the next higher echelon holding area. The first long-term detention facility is the theater detention facility. This facility is the first level that is resourced for long-term care of detainees. Some detainees may be evacuated outside of theater to Army level detention facilities or joint strategic detention facilities.

3-49. In a mature theater, detention units provide mission command, administration and logistics services (for assigned personnel, detainees and U.S. military prisoner population), and custody and control for the operation of a U.S. military prisoner confinement facility or detainee detention facility. Guard companies provide guards for detainees or U.S. military prisoners, bases, base camps, and facilities.

3-50. Detention operations require a robust and focused sustainable logistics effort to provide security and order and to meet basic health and sanitary needs. Too often, the scope of the detention facility sustainment effort is not realized until health or security requirements overwhelm the logistics system. The detention operations requirements must be integrated early into the planning process. The maintenance and development of large-scale detention facilities is a continuous sustainment effort and often involves contractors, host nation personnel, or third-country nationals. The synchronization of sustainment, security, and operational requirements and the efforts necessary to operate a detention facility are a complex tasks that require sufficient authority to achieve a unity of effort and security.

Host Nation Corrections Training and Support

3-51. In many operational environments, U.S. forces are deployed to an area of operations with a limited or failed policing or corrections system; this includes host nation capability and capacity for the detention of detained personnel and subsequent incarceration of convicted criminals. Military police forces may be required to initially perform corrections duties to establish or maintain a secure environment. In the long term, it is critically important to establish host nation capability to assume corrections operations as soon as possible. The United States, unified-action partners, and the host nation should institute a comprehensive program of corrections training and development. U.S. military police units may be required to establish and conduct corrections training programs to facilitate the transition of this authority to full host nation control. This effort is enabled by military occupational specialty 31E personnel with technical corrections training and expertise.

3-52. Within many countries, the concepts of the acceptable treatment of prisoners and the application of prison operations are vastly different from those of the United States and the majority of our multinational partners. Police often arrest and detain prisoners without charge or trial, often for extended periods. Jails and prisons are typically overcrowded, have inadequate facilities, and are poorly managed by western standards. In some countries, the abuse and torture of prisoners may be common or even normal. The inadequate facilities can present serious health and hygiene issues for prisoners, guards, and the local

population. Military forces, specifically military police, assuming responsibility over corrections operations within a host nation may be faced with not only the operation of the facilities, but also the training, development, and mentorship of host nation personnel to reform and develop the corrections system to meet international standards in compliance with the Law of Armed Conflict. Issues to be addressed may include—

- Ensuring humane treatment of host nation prisoners.
- Monitoring and enforcing pretrial correction standards consistent with the rule of law.
- Improving and maintaining health, hygiene, and appropriate social services.
- Establishing and maintaining the appropriate oversight of the corrections system.
- Promoting the rehabilitation and reintegration of host nation prisoners.

3-53. Military police detention units and assigned military occupational specialty 31E Soldiers are skilled at providing corrections training, development, and transition to train host nation corrections personnel in the basic and advanced skills that are required to operate corrections facilities—from the guard force to senior administrative personnel. They ensure that host nation personnel are trained, are capable of implementing humane treatment, and are capable of providing adequate and safe conditions for host nation prisoners. Military occupational specialty 31E Soldiers may also serve in an advisory role to assist in the transition of responsibility from the United States and unified-action partners to the host nation corrections personnel, ensuring a safe and orderly transition. Military police brigades and battalions are staffed to provide leadership and administrative oversight, to include training and integrating with host nation administrative and governmental counterparts.

SECURITY AND MOBILITY SUPPORT

3-54. Security and mobility support is a military police discipline conducted to protect the force and noncombatants and preserve the commander's freedom of action. Military police units expedite the secure movement of theater resources to ensure that commanders receive the forces, supplies, and equipment needed to support the operational plan and changing tactical situations. Throughout all aspects of the security and mobility support discipline, military police units conduct proactive measures to detect, deter, and defeat threat forces operating within the area of operations.

3-55. During security and mobility support, military police units provide combat power to protect the mission command headquarters, equipment, and services that are essential for mission success as prioritized by the joint force commander or geographic combatant commander. Major subtasks that are associated with security and mobility support include—

- Movement support to mobility operations.
- Traffic regulation and enforcement.
- Main supply route regulations enforcement.
- Route reconnaissance.
- Movement of dislocated civilians.
- Resettlement operations.
- Population and resource control.
- Reconnaissance.
- Surveillance.
- Operational area security.
- Protective services.
- Response force operations.
- Secure supply routes and convoys.
- Antiterrorism.
- Physical security.

- Logistics security.
- Crime prevention.

3-56. Military police also implement countermeasures, which may include implementing vulnerability assessments, developing procedures to detect terrorist actions before they occur, hardening likely targets, and conducting offensive operations to destroy an enemy. Military police units actively use checkpoints and roadblocks to control the movement of vehicles, personnel, and materiel and to prevent illegal actions that may aid the enemy. These control measures serve as a deterrent to terrorist activities, saboteurs, and other threats. Military police frequently are designated as an initial response force to respond to emergencies and threat attacks. **An *initial response force* is a unit designated by the commander to respond to threat attacks or emergency situations.**

3-57. Military police units provide response forces capable of delaying or defeating enemy attempts to disrupt military operations in the area of operations. The firepower, movement, and communications capabilities of the military police unit make threat detection, while aggressively patrolling the area of operations, main supply routes, key terrain, and critical assets. The organic communications of the military police unit enable the unit to advise appropriate headquarters, base camps, or units in the vicinity of impending enemy activities. With organic firepower, military police units are capable of engaging in decisive operations against an enemy to defeat Level I and Level II threats or delay a Level III threat until a tactical combat force can respond.

Movement Support to Mobility Operations

3-58. Military police provide movement support to mobility operations, ensuring orderly and safe movement of U.S. forces and enabling freedom of movement for the maneuver commander. Military police support movement control and area security to facilitate movement of follow-on forces in support of the operational plan.

Support to Gap-Crossing Operations

3-59. U.S. forces conduct gap-crossing operations to project combat power across a linear obstacle (wet or dry) to accomplish a mission (see FM 3-34.22). The three types of gap crossing are deliberate, hasty, and covert. Regardless of the type of crossing, the planning requirements and military police technical support are similar. Military police units play a vital role by assisting the commander in controlling traffic at the gap-crossing site and vicinity to allow units to enter and cross the gap as quickly and efficiently as possible. The crossing is usually planned and conducted by the headquarters directing the crossing. A division gap-crossing operation is conducted by a joint force commander or corps, depending on how the area of responsibility is structured. A BCT deliberate crossing is controlled by a division or corps, depending on how the area of responsibility is structured. Whenever a BCT is crossing, the military police assets task-organized to the BCT may also cross to provide uninterrupted support to the BCT. In these instances, there is typically a reliance on an engineer headquarters or an MEB in the area of responsibility to support the crossing. The same is true for breaching and passage-of-lines operations.

3-60. The main thrust of military police support to gap-crossing operations is within the immediate gap-crossing site and routes leading to and from the site. Military police direct the crossing units to their proper locations using holding and staging areas to ensure that units move through the area within the time listed on the movement schedule. This is a highly critical aspect of gap (and especially river) crossing operations because the number of crossing sites are limited. Military police units are placed where they can expedite and enforce movement tables on main supply routes leading into the crossing area. Military police unit employment for gap crossing is influenced by the mission variables. The number and the placement of military police units supporting a gap-crossing operation vary with the size of the crossing force, the direction of the crossing (forward or retrograde), and the degree of enemy resistance expected or encountered. In most gap-crossing operations, military police traffic control posts and engineer regulating points are located on both sides of the river (or other type of major gap) to improve communication and coordination between the units.

3-61. Military police unit support to gap-crossing operations reduces the crossing time and promotes the efficient movement of vehicles. It reduces congestion, speeds the crossing, and enables the crossing units to maintain momentum. Military police units establish staging areas, holding areas, and traffic control posts to control movement into and within the crossing site area according to the traffic control plan. Military police can also conduct area security to the rear and flanks of crossing forces to enhance security (see FM 3-19.4).

3-62. Military police units operating inside the crossing areas are typically under operational control of the crossing area commander for the duration of the operation. The military police unit operating outside of the crossing area is under the mission command of its appropriate echelon commander.

Support to Breaching Operations

3-63. Breaching operations are a combined arms mission conducted to allow forces to maneuver through obstacles. Obstacle breaching is the employment of a combination of tactics, techniques, and procedures to advance an attacking force to the far side of an obstacle that may be covered by fire. It is perhaps the most difficult combat task a force can encounter. Breaching operations begin when friendly forces detect an obstacle, and they end when the operational handover has occurred between the follow-on forces and the unit conducting the breaching operation.

3-64. Military police support to breaching operations is based on mission variables, the available resources, and the commander's priorities. As a minimum, military police support includes—

- Establishing traffic control posts along routes leading to or departing from the breaching site.
- Establishing holding areas.
- Establishing traffic control posts at the breaching site.
- Assisting engineers with temporary route signs.
- Establishing straggler-control operations.
- Conducting area security.

3-65. Military police units conduct close coordination with the crossing force commander and the task force commander executing the breaching operation. The most critical military police support is provided at the breaching site, where military police units provide the commander with a means to control traffic flow to appropriate cleared lanes. When multiple lanes branch off from a single far-recognition marker, military police units assist in directing the formation through various lanes. They also assist in modifying the traffic flow when lanes are closed for maintenance or expansion. Military police units enable the commander to make required changes in traffic flow due to the tactical situation. As in gap-crossing operations, military police support to breaching operations provides an efficient and orderly flow of forces into and through the breached area.

Support to Passage-of-Lines Operations

3-66. In a passage-of-lines operations, forces move forward or rearward through the combat positions of another force with the intention of moving into or out of contact with the enemy. The passage-of-lines is a high-risk military operation that requires close coordination between the passing unit, the stationary unit, and supporting forces (see FM 3-90-1).

3-67. Military police units assist passage-of-lines operations by reducing confusion and congestion of units into and out of the passage area. Military police units provide traffic regulation and enforcement in areas surrounding passage points and passage lanes to ensure that passing units have priority for using routes to and through the areas. The headquarters directing the operation sets the priority of route use. Military police units support the forward, rearward, or lateral passage of lines. Before actual operation, military police units assigned to support passage operations conduct route reconnaissance and become familiar with the routes to, through, and beyond the area of passage. Maintaining unit integrity and reducing incidents of stragglers is vital to maintaining the passing unit momentum in a forward passage of lines. Military police units perform aggressive straggler and dislocated-civilian control operations to prevent the possible infiltration of the enemy into friendly forces.

Main Supply Route Regulation Enforcement

3-68. Military police units provide main supply route regulation enforcement to keep the routes within controlled spaces free for priority tactical and sustainment operations. Military police units support the command main supply route regulation measures as stated in the traffic regulation plan. The traffic regulation plan contains specific measures to ensure the smooth and efficient use of the road network. It assigns military route numbers and names, the direction of travel, highway regulation points, and preplanned military police traffic control posts. A ***traffic control post*** **is a manned post that is used to preclude the interruption of traffic flow or movement along a designated route.** Most important to

military police, it gives the route control classification. Military police units ensure that classified routes are used only by authorized traffic within their timetable schedule. Military police traffic control posts prevent vehicles from traveling on roads that are too narrow for their passage or unable to support their weight to ensure that they do not obstruct the route.

3-69. To expedite traffic on main supply routes, military police units operate special circulation control measures, such as—

- Temporary route signing.
- Static posts (traffic control posts, roadblocks, checkpoints, holding areas, defiles at critical points).
- Mobile patrolling between static posts.
- Traffic and road conditions monitoring.

3-70. Military police units also gather military and police information on friendly and enemy activities and help stranded vehicles and crews. They place temporary route signs to warn of hazards or to guide drivers unfamiliar with routes. Using these measures, military police units exercise jurisdiction over the road network in the area of operations and coordinate with the host nation (whenever possible) to expedite movement on main supply routes.

3-71. Military police units employed with engineer, logistics, explosive ordnance disposal, aviation, and other forces may establish movement corridors to provide the secure movement of military traffic through vulnerable areas. A *movement corridor* is a designated area established to protect and enable ground movement along a route. (FM 3-90.31) Based on published movement tables, the combined movement corridor forces will open and maintain a safe passage route through uncontrolled terrain. The opening of the route requires a synchronized effort, with each branch providing their unique movement and mobility skills to the route. The sequence may include engineer route clearance and maintenance activities that are integrated with area security implementation along the corridor. Engineer and military police forces conduct route reconnaissance missions to determine problems along the route. Sustainment forces may then establish temporary holding, maintenance, or rest areas along the corridor as the tactical situation dictates. A holding area is a waiting area that forces use during traffic interruptions or deployment from an aerial port or seaport of embarkation. Finally, military police traffic control posts and convoy escorts of critical commodities of supplies are established and, with aviation convoy security in place, the convoys move along the protected route to their final destination. The movement corridor opens and closes for specified time periods to meet the movement table requirements.

Route Reconnaissance

3-72. Military police units conduct hasty and deliberate route reconnaissance to obtain information on a route and nearby terrain where the enemy can influence troop movement. Route reconnaissance focuses on continually monitoring the condition of main supply routes, alternate supply routes, and specified key terrain along routes and reporting to the tactical commander. Military police patrols look for restricting terrain, effects of weather on the route, damage to the route, CBRN contamination, and enemy presence or absence. When enemy activity is spotted, military police patrols report it, maintain surveillance, and develop the situation according to the commander's plan and intent. To gather information for proposed traffic plans, military police units look at the type and number of available routes, load classifications, route widths, obstructions, and restrictions. All of this information is critical to the commander's situational understanding and the development of the common operational picture. Route reconnaissance may be conducted as part of a multifunctional team with engineer, CBRN, and other specialties (see FM 3-34.170).

Straggler Control

3-73. Straggler control refers to operations conducted to regulate friendly forces that have become separated from their commands by events in the area of operations. Straggler control is conducted by military police units using mobile patrols, traffic control posts, and checkpoint teams to return stragglers to their parent units. Most stragglers are simply Soldiers who become separated from their command as the result of a tactical operation. Military police units direct Soldiers to their parent unit or to a replacement

unit according to command policies. These units also provide basic first aid and initiate the medical evacuation of wounded stragglers.

3-74. Military police units can set up special posts for straggler control following CBRN attacks or major enemy actions that result in large numbers of lost, dazed, or confused military personnel. Mobile military police patrols operate between posts and direct or collect stragglers. Straggler collection points may be needed if many stragglers are present in the area of operations. If multinational forces are present in the theater, each nation establishes a collection point for its own personnel. Military police units must be aware of allied straggler collection locations and assist allied Soldiers in returning to their respective commands. Military police units use available theater transportation assets to transfer stragglers from traffic control posts and checkpoints to straggler collection points. At the collection points, they are screened and sorted for removal to a medical treatment facility, return to their units, or movement as directed by the controlling headquarters.

3-75. Military police units report intelligence information about stragglers with whom they come in contact. This information is compiled by the military police unit headquarters and forwarded through appropriate channels to the higher command. Information that is given by stragglers has immediate tactical value is reported immediately using military police and MI channels.

Resettlement Operations

3-76. Military operations that are conducted across the range of military operations often require the temporary resettlement of civilian populations. Military police provide support to resettlement operations, which includes establishing and operating facilities and supporting civil affairs efforts to ensure that supply routes remain open and clear to the maneuver commander. Resettlement is conducted by military police to shelter, sustain, guard, protect, and account for civilians that are dislocated as a result of military or civil conflict or natural or man-made disasters. The level of control is typically drastically different from that of those interned during detainee operations. During detainee operations, the level of control and supervision is high, based on security risk. During resettlement operations, dislocated civilians are allowed the freedom of movement as long as such movement does not impede military operations. However, it is important to note that any facility housing large numbers of persons for significant periods will be prone to unrest and the formation of disruptive and criminal networks. Some of the same information-gathering techniques employed to identify and mitigate disruptive and dangerous activities within a detainee facility may be required within the context of a resettlement operation. Additional tasks that support and complement resettlement operations include enforcing curfews, restricting movement, checking travel permits and registration cards, operating checkpoints properly, instituting amnesty programs, and conducting inspections.

3-77. Dislocated civilians are a special category during resettlement operations. Civil affairs personnel perform a significant number of key tasks during resettlement operations. Resettlement operations minimize civilian interference with military operations and protect civilians from combat operations. Resettlement operations should be conducted by host nation elements when possible, minimizing the requirement for military resources. Civil affairs elements coordinate with host nation agencies to facilitate resettlement operations. Non-military international aid organizations and other nongovernmental organizations are the primary resources used to assist civil affairs forces. However, civil affairs forces may depend on other military units, such military police units, to assist with a particular category of dislocated civilians.

3-78. Controlling dislocated civilians is essential during military operations because uncontrolled masses of people can seriously impair the military mission. Commanders plan measures to protect dislocated civilians in the area of operations and to prevent their interference with the mission. Military police commanders and staffs must have a clear understanding of the operational environment, rules of engagement, and legal considerations before setting up a resettlement facility in support of resettlement operations. Military police are specifically trained to provide care and shelter for dislocated civilians. A military police battalion is typically organized to support, safeguard, account for, guard, and provide the humane treatment for up 8,000 dislocated civilians.

Dislocated-Civilian Control

3-79. Military police units providing traffic regulation and enforcement on main supply routes may encounter dislocated civilians that could hinder military traffic flow. These units ensure priority to military traffic by diverting dislocated civilians from main supply routes and other areas to refugee routes or resettlement facilities. They deny the movement of civilians whose location, direction of movement, or actions may be a threat to themselves, tactical operations, or sustainment operations. If functioning, the host nation government is responsible for identifying routes for the safe movement of dislocated civilians out of an area of operations. If needed, military police units assist the civil affairs unit and host nation assets in redirecting dislocated civilians to alternate routes.

3-80. U.S. and military police forces do not assume control of dislocated civilians unless they are requested to do so by the host nation or are operating in an environment with a hostile government. When the joint force commander or geographic combatant commander assumes responsibility, military police elements coordinate with civil affairs elements to set up traffic control posts at critical points along the route to direct dislocated civilians to secondary roadways and areas not used by military forces. When directed, dislocated civilians may be housed within resettlement facilities operated by U.S. forces and supported by military police.

Population and Resource Control

3-81. Military police conduct population and resource control to support military operations and shape the operational environment. Military operations are not conducted in an operational environment that is free of civilian presence or influence. Whatever the operational environment, military operations can be disrupted by—

- Uncontrolled and uncoordinated movement of frightened civilians in the environment.
- Uncontrolled and uncoordinated movement of civilians who are conducting legitimate activities.
- Illegal or illegitimate activities (insurgent operations, black market activities).

3-82. Population and resource control operations. They are conducted during times of civil or military emergency. Population control and resource control are ideally conducted by the host nation; however, during extreme conditions where host nation capabilities have broken down or are nonexistent, U.S. forces must conduct population and resource control. For practical and security reasons, military forces use population and resource control measures to varying degrees during the range of military operations.

3-83. Population control operations are conducted to provide security for a population, deny personnel and materials to the enemy, mobilize population and material resources, and detect and reduce the effectiveness of the threat. Dislocated-civilian operations and noncombatant evacuation operations are two special categories of population control that require extensive planning and coordination among various military and non-military organizations. Population controls may also include implementing martial law during a complete breakdown of law and order. Population controls can include—

- Maintaining curfews.
- Restricting movement in specified areas.
- Requiring travel permits.
- Resettling specific portions of a population.

3-84. Resource control regulates the movement or consumption of materiel resources, mobilizes materiel resources, and denies materiel to the enemy. Resource control measures may include—

- Requiring licenses.
- Implementing and enforcing regulations or guidelines.
- Conducting checkpoints and inspection stations.
- Implementing amnesty programs.

- Implementing ration controls.
- Dislocated-civilian control.

Reconnaissance and Surveillance Operations

3-85. Military police serve as the eyes and ears of the commander, especially in support areas, by seeking out the enemy and reporting information obtained by reconnaissance patrols. Military police units conduct reconnaissance and surveillance to monitor likely high-speed avenues of approach and potential landing zones and drop zones. Military police units become familiar with towns and other populated areas, ridgelines, woods, and critical terrain features from which the enemy can influence movements along road networks. Military police units pay close attention to areas near facilities designated as critical by the commander. These areas may include key main supply route bridges, tunnels, depots, terminals, sustainment bases, ammunition supply points, communications centers/nodes, critical routes, and mission command headquarters. The MWD teams provide patrol and explosive detection/tracking capabilities that enhance reconnaissance operations.

Operational Area Security

3-86. Military police conduct operational area security tasks to protect friendly forces, assets, and operations in an area of operations, typically in support areas. Although vital to the success of military operations, operational area security is an economy-of-force mission designed to ensure the continued conduct of sustainment operations and to support decisive and shaping operations. Tasks supporting operational area security are conducted by all units. (ADRP 3-37 contains an in-depth discussion of operational area security and protection.) Within the context of area security operations, military police specifically support the operational area security efforts of the sustainment base and support units through the execution of key tasks, to include—

- Base/base camp defense.
- Critical asset security.
- Protective services for selected individuals.
- Response force operations.
- Line-of-communication, supply route, and convoy security.
- Port and pier security.
- Area damage control.

Base/Base Camp Defense

3-87. Military police units provide protection operations for bases (to include airbases) in the area of operations. In this role, military police units are capable of detecting and engaging enemy forces. Typically, military police units will provide in-depth security by operating outside the perimeter of the base beyond the range of threat weapons. This facilitates the early detection of the threat and the engagement of threat forces at a sufficient standoff distance to destroy or disrupt the threat before it can engage friendly bases. Police information gathered by military police units conducting area security is disseminated through the operations process to update the common operational picture. Airbase protection and defense is a key components of military police area security. When the threat exceeds the airbase capabilities, engaged commanders request military police assistance through appropriate mission command channels.

3-88. Airbase defense requires special military police coordination with the U.S. Air Force security forces and other security forces responsible for the base defense. Air Force security force units are responsible for internal airbase security and defense. Military police and/or Air Force security forces are typically responsible for the external defense of the air base. Air Force and Army forces must coordinate their defensive efforts. This includes boundaries, fire control measures, and coordination points. Combining the Air Force security forces with military police units provides an in-depth defense for weapons, systems, aircraft, command centers, personnel, and other priority resources established by the airbase commander.

3-89. Military police units are trained and equipped to detect, delay, and repel enemy attacks. If the enemy force exceeds the capabilities of the military police units responding, the unit will conduct a delaying action until additional military police units or a tactical combat force arrives. If there is a viable host nation

security force, or other Service elements, those security forces could also be used for airbase defense and may possibly be used as a response force if these capabilities are resident within the force. The success of military police employment depends on the critical exchange of information before and during military police employment. Good communications, an understanding of the airbase defense plan, and liaison operations are vital in preventing responding forces from entering a situation that could result in fratricide.

Critical Asset Security

3-90. *Critical asset security* is the protection and security of personnel and physical assets or information that is analyzed and deemed essential to the operation and success of the mission and to resources required for protection. (ADRP 3-37) When military police units provide protection around a critical site or asset, they usually conduct mobile security patrols, taking advantage of wheeled armored vehicles with crew-served weapons and communications platforms manned by three military police Soldiers organic to the military police team and grouped in squad-, platoon-, or company-size elements. This standoff protection is capable of detecting and defeating Level I and Level II enemy threats as the enemy attempts to maneuver within direct-fire range of the facilities or assets (JP 3-10 describes the threat levels).

3-91. Military police units provide security to critical sites and assets in the area of operations. Military police employment maximizes mobility, lethality, and communications capabilities. Military police units may be required to establish local security and mobility measures (such as checkpoints and listening/observation posts) to further protect facilities. Military police units provide internal access control points to critical facilities and act as an initial response force. When the critical site or asset relocates, military police units provide in-transit security protection. Other types of critical site security include ammunition supply points; deepwater ports; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) terminals and pipelines; trains; and railways; and bases.

Protective Services Operations and High-Risk Personnel Security

3-92. High-risk personnel are those personnel designated as high risk for targeting by terrorist or criminal elements due to their grade, assignment, symbolic value, vulnerabilities, and specific threats. There are four levels of high-risk personnel:

- Level 1 and 2 high-risk personnel require significant protection, to include dedicated personal security details and other security measures as outlined in Department of Defense Instruction (DODI) O-2000.22.
- Level 2.5 authorizes the designation of a CID Personal Security Advisor, who coordinates travel security for the assigned high-risk personnel, and may be armed only if acting as part of a larger (temporary) protective detail.
- Level 3 is not authorized protective services, however should receive additional antiterrorism and personal protective measure training.

3-93. The Deputy Secretary of Defense is the approval authority for all high-risk personnel levels. Approval authority for high-risk personnel level 2.5 for OCONUS travel is delegated to the Under Secretary of Defense for Policy by the Deputy Secretary of Defense.

3-94. Specially trained USACIDC special agents provide continuous executive-level protective service to designated Level 1 and 2 High-Risk Personnel. USACIDC typically provides all close-in protection for Level 1 and 2 high-risk personnel but often requires the augmentation of military police teams assigned or attached to USACIDC and trained in protective service tasks. Military police coordinate with USACIDC when augmenting personal security details. MWD teams may be employed to enhance military police and USACIDC detection and protection capabilities.

Response Force Operations

3-95. Military police units may be designated as the base camp or critical facility commander's response force against Level I and Level II threat attacks. Military police units gather police information about the enemy while performing security and mobility support missions throughout the area of operations. This information updates the commander's common operational picture with enemy and criminal activity near base camps and throughout the area of operations. When needed, military police units provide wheeled

armor response forces to respond to base camps and critical facilities under attack and to destroy the enemy. A base camp commander's defense plan is the cornerstone for protecting units and sustainment operations.

3-96. When the threat exceeds a base camp or critical facility capabilities, the commander requests response force support. When military police are the designated response force, military police units that are near base camps, on patrol, or conducting area security will consolidate their forces, respond as quickly as possible, and conduct combat operations to destroy the enemy. When the threat exceeds military police capabilities, the military police response force may conduct a battle handover to a tactical combat force. Military police consolidate into squads, platoons, and companies as needed to delay, defeat, or defend against Level I and Level II threat elements. Military police forces performing or tasked as a response may conduct a—

- Movement to contact.
- Hasty ambush.
- Hasty attack.
- Delay.
- Call for fire (indirect fire or close air support).
- Critical site defense.

3-97. If military police are the designated response force, they must—

- Review base defense plans.
- Coordinate with the supported base commanders to synchronize response plans.
- Exchange communications frequencies to ensure communications capability between security elements.
- Identify military police contingency plans to counter likely enemy activities.
- Integrate air defense artillery, engineer, chemical, indirect-fire, and close air support into their plans (if available).

Lines-of- Communication, Supply Route, and Convoy Security

3-98. Military police units are capable of providing security and protection of lines of communication and supply routes that are identified as critical to military operations. Military police also provide convoy security for high-priority designated units transporting joint force commander- or geographic combatant commander-designated critical supplies to combat forces. Military police teams moving with a convoy are typically the least effective method for securing convoys. It is often most efficient to employ military police units on aggressive patrolling, route, area, and zone reconnaissance measures that would create a safe and secure environment for all types of unit movement.

3-99. Units may establish a movement corridor to set the conditions to protect and enable the movement of traffic along a designated surface route. Units conduct synchronized operations within the movement corridor, such as reconnaissance, security, mobility, and inform and influence activities for forces that require additional mission command, protection, and support to enable their movement. Movement corridors may be established to support the movement of a single element or for long-term security to facilitate the movement of numerous elements along an established main supply route. A movement corridor may be established along a main supply route or along a route designated for unit movement. The movement corridor would typically include the airspace above it to allow the establishing unit to conduct aerial reconnaissance and fires.

3-100. Military police provide critical capabilities to successful movement corridor operations. Military police will typically conduct movement corridor operations as part of a multifunctional MEB. While movement corridors may be established by military police brigades or battalions in support of a corps or theater, they typically would require significant augmentation for the maintenance of any long-term movement corridor. Several tasks should be integrated to set conditions that help secure unit movement within a movement corridor. These tasks may include—

- Supporting situational understanding.
- Conducting tactical maneuver (performed by the area of operations owner or security forces).

- Conducting route and convoy security operations.
- Conducting antiterrorism activities.
- Conducting CBRNE operations.
- Conducting survivability operations.
- Transferring security responsibility when crossing area of operations borders or at the nearest secure area, facility, or base.
- Integrating fires.
- Coordinating logistics support.
- Conducting tactical troop movement.
- Employing combat patrols.
- Conducting counter ambush actions.
- Employing obscurants.

Tactical Overwatch(Port and Pier Security)

3-101.   Military police typically provide area security for port and pier areas. The joint force commander and subordinate joint force commanders ensure that port security plans and responsibilities are clearly delineated and assigned. Military police assigned a port area as part of their area of operations must develop and organize plans to ensure that Soldiers are trained and equipped to protect or secure port areas and cargo as necessary. The patrol of harbors and anchorages is generally the mission of a dedicated port security unit and may include waterfront security operations. (See JP 3-10 for more information on port security units.)

Area Damage Control

3-102.   Military police provide support to area damage control when the damage and scope of the attack is limited and they can respond and recover with local assets and resources. Optimally, commanders aim to recover immediately. This involves resuming operations; maintaining or restoring order; administering first aid; searching and rescuing entrapped, sick, and injured personnel; evacuating casualties; isolating danger or hazard areas; and mitigating personnel and materiel losses.

Antiterrorism

3-103.   *Antiterrorism* consists of defensive measures used to reduce the vulnerability of individuals and property to terrorist acts, to include limited response and containment by local military and civilian forces. (JP 3-07.2) It is an element of protection. Antiterrorism is a consideration for all forces during all military operations. Military police are trained extensively in antiterrorism measures and methods for assessing the threat, implementing preventive measures, and responding to terrorist incidents in a law enforcement capacity and in general terms. Military police can advise leaders and staffs from other units on antiterrorism requirements, measures, and response requirements.

3-104.   Military police identify potential terrorist threats and other threat activities to enhance the freedom of action by U.S. forces. The identification of threats is necessary to establish measures to protect from surprise, observation, detection, interference, espionage, terrorism, and sabotage. Identification of threats enables U.S. forces to take actions and implement procedures to reduce vulnerabilities to terrorist acts or attacks. These actions reduce personnel vulnerability to terrorism through education to enhance an understanding of the nature of terrorism, the maintenance of heightened situational understanding regarding current threats, and the mitigation of vulnerabilities to terrorist acts by implementing appropriate protective measures.

3-105.   Military police are also trained and prepared to rapidly respond to terrorist attacks when prevention efforts fail. These emergency response actions incorporate measures to treat casualties, apprehend perpetrators, preserve evidence, minimize property damage, restore operations, and expedite the criminal investigation and collection of lessons learned from a terrorist incident. (For more information regarding antiterrorism, see AR 525-13 and FM 3-37.2.)

Physical Security

3-106. *Physical security* is that part of security concerned with physical measures designed to safeguard personnel; to prevent unauthorized access to equipment, installations, material, and documents; and to safeguard them against espionage, sabotage, damage, and theft. (JP 1-02) The Army employs physical security measures in depth to protect personnel, information, and critical resources in all locations and situations against various threats by developing and implementing effective security policies and procedures. This total system approach is based on the continuing analysis and employment of protective measures, to include physical barriers, clear zones, lighting, access and key control, intrusion detection devices, defensive positions, and nonlethal capabilities. (See AR 190-13 and ATTP 3-39.32 for more information regarding physical security requirements and procedures.)

3-107. Physical security measures are applied in depth as a critical aspect in applying security and antiterrorism measures on static locations. They are key in preventing unauthorized access to restricted, controlled, or vulnerable areas. Physical security measures must be prioritized based on vulnerability and threat assessments to protect critical sites, personnel, and equipment. They should be used in conjunction with other security measures, such as mobile patrols, operations, and information security measures as part of a holistic security program. Critical areas requiring extensive physical security measures may include—

- Bases and installations.
- Troop housing areas (especially high-concentration areas).
- Weapons, arms, ammunition, and explosives storage areas.
- Key command posts.
- Aerial ports of debarkations, aerial ports of embarkation, seaports of debarkations, and seaports of embarkation.
- Critical sustainment hubs.
- Access points and entry control points.

3-108. Physical security policies, programs, and goals are approved by the Provost Marshal General under the authority of the Army Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations and Plans. USAMPS provides the Physical Security Course to train physical security inspectors and subject matter experts; the course provides military police Soldiers with an H3 identifier. The course is a requirement for physical security inspectors on Army installations, posts, camps, and stations. Installation provost marshals are typically responsible for providing physical security expertise, to include periodic inspections to ensure compliance with physical security directives. Military police are well versed in physical security applications and procedures and can provide commanders and staffs with subject matter expertise regarding the physical security of their personnel and assets. In an operational environment where strict adherence to physical security standards is not possible, military police personnel trained in physical security can assist commanders and staffs in developing measures to mitigate gaps in physical security requirements. While military police employ significant physical security measures in the course of military police operations, physical security measures are required by all Army units. Physical security measures employed to protect personnel and equipment may include—

- **Establishing checkpoints**. Checkpoints are established to monitor and control the movement of personnel and vehicles, inspect cargo, enforce laws and regulations, and provide information. Establishing checkpoints can be a critical measure in a commander's overall protection efforts. Checkpoints can also enable effective civil control operations. Military police can provide expertise to commanders on the construction and procedures involved in checkpoint operations. They may also be used to operate critical checkpoints, control traffic flow, enforce laws, and control movement at critical locations (such as border crossing sites), or control access to critical facilities. ATTP 3-39.32 and Training Circular (TC) 19-210 provides additional information on access control and checkpoint operations.
- **Controlling access to equipment, installation, material, and documents.** Access control involves the establishment of a system of complementary, overlapping security measures to control access to critical resources and information. Measures may include physical barriers, clear zones, lighting, access and key control, the use of security badges, intrusion detection devices, defensive positions, and nonlethal capabilities. ATTP 3-39.32 and TC 19-210 provide additional information on access control and checkpoint operations; AR 190-11 covers physical

security requirements, to include access control requirements for arms, ammunition, and explosives; and AR 190-13 covers physical security requirements, to include access control requirements for Army assets other than arms, ammunition, and explosives.

● **Employing intrusion detection devices.** The employment of intrusion detection devices includes conducting site surveys and installing and operating intrusion detection systems to protect Army installations, personnel, operations, and critical resources in tactical and nontactical situations. ATTP 3-39.32 provides additional information on employment of intrusion detection devices.

Employment of Unmanned Aircraft Systems

3-109. Small, unmanned aircraft systems are designed for reconnaissance, surveillance, and remote monitoring and are capable of locating and recognizing enemy forces, moving vehicles, weapons systems, and other targets that contrast with their surroundings. Small, unmanned aircraft systems are also capable of locating and confirming the position of friendly forces and the presence of noncombatant civilians, monitoring detainee operations, supporting border operations, or searching for missing persons. Military police commanders and their staffs may integrate small, unmanned aircraft systems to perform the reconnaissance and surveillance of specific locations and routes during military police tactical or law enforcement operations in support of posts, camps, and stations to help clarify and verify facts and assumptions in the operational environment. Military police can launch and recover a small, unmanned aircraft system from unprepared terrain in minutes without special equipment. The system can be remotely controlled from the ground control unit or can fly completely autonomous missions using global positioning system waypoint navigation for launch and recovery. (See ATTP 3-04.15 and FM 3-04.155 for more information on unmanned aircraft systems.)

POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS

3-110. Police intelligence operations are a military police functions, integrated within all military police operations, that supports the operations process through the analysis, production, and dissemination of information collected as a result of police activities to enhance situational understanding, protection, civil control, and law enforcement. This information is gathered during the conduct of military police operations and, on analysis, may contribute to commander's critical information requirements; intelligence-led, time-sensitive operations; or policing strategies necessary to forecast, anticipate, and preempt crime or related disruptive activities to maintain order. Military police and USACIDC special agents develop police intelligence operations skills while supporting police operations at home camp and station, enabling them to integrate these skills across all military police disciplines in support of decisive action. Other key definitions that provide framework and understanding for police intelligence include the following—

● *Police information* **is available information concerning known and potential enemy and criminal threats and vulnerabilities collected during police activities, operations, and investigations.**

● *Police intelligence* **is the application of systems, technologies, and processes that analyze applicable data and information necessary for situational understanding and policing activity focus to achieve social order.**

● *Criminal intelligence* **is a category of police intelligence derived from the collection, analysis, and interpretation of all available information concerning known potential criminal threats and vulnerabilities of supported organizations.**

3-111. USACIDC and PM staffs provide criminal intelligence analysis to commanders that identify indicators of potential crimes and criminal threats against Army property, facilities, and/or personnel. Criminal intelligence is a subset of police intelligence focused on criminal activity and specific criminal threats. It is more focused in scope than police intelligence, which has a broader focus that includes police systems, capabilities, infrastructure, criminal activity, and threats. All criminal intelligence is police intelligence; however not all police intelligence is criminal intelligence.

3-112. Police intelligence operations are critical enabler to policing and law enforcement activities; they can provide relevant, actionable police information or police intelligence to the Army through integration

into the operations process and fusion with other intelligence data. The police intelligence operations function is integrated throughout each of the military police disciplines. Continuous integrated police intelligence operations activities provide police information and police intelligence to military police commanders and staffs to support ongoing military police operations throughout the collection, analysis, and production activities. Simultaneously, police intelligence operations continually feed information to the operations process and its three integrating processes (see ADRP 3-0 and ADRP 5-0). Figure 3-1 provides a graphic representation of police intelligence operations support to military police operations and the operations process.
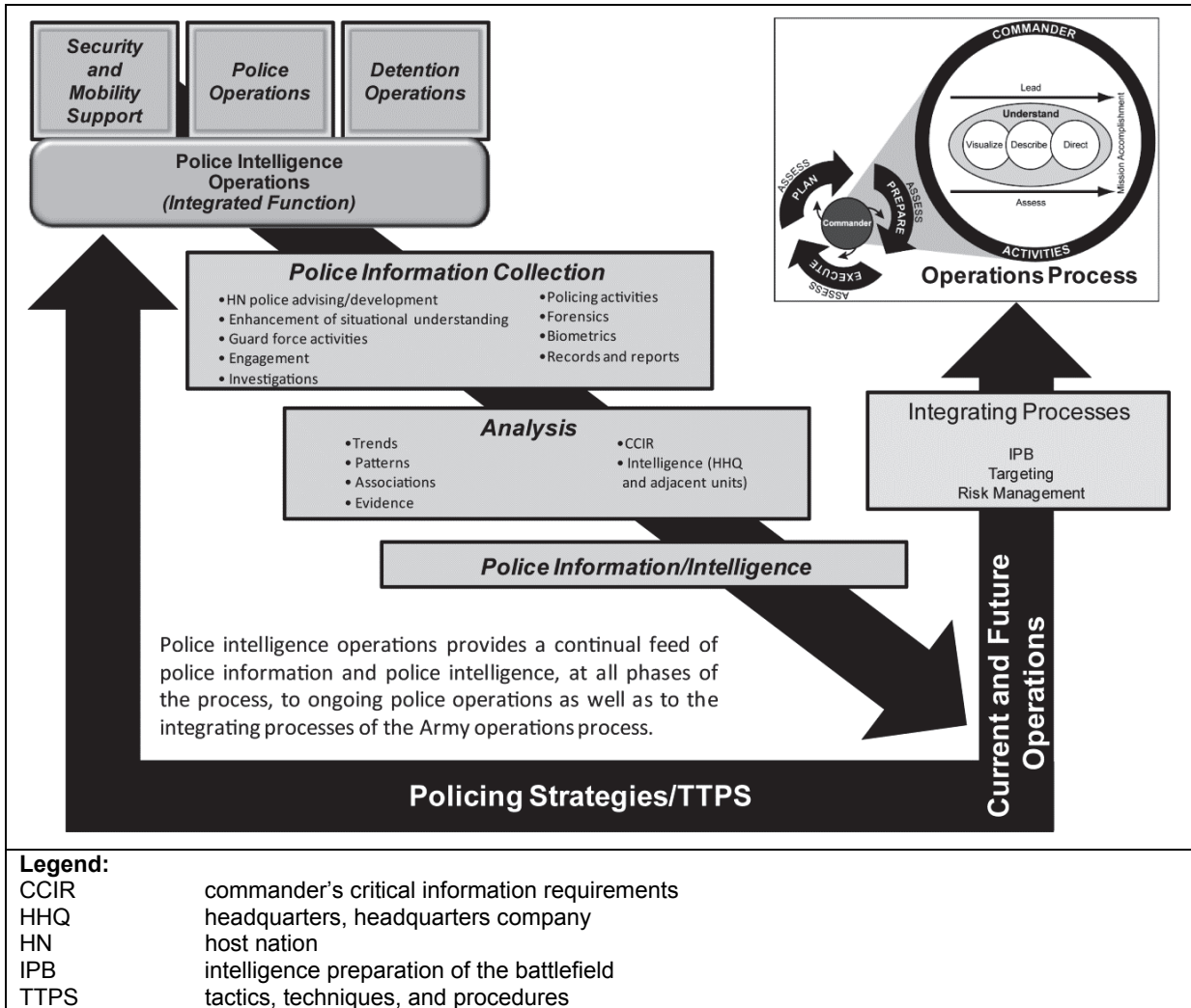
Figure 3-1. Police intelligence operations and the operations process

3-113.   Police intelligence operations address the reality that, in some operational environments, the threat is more criminal than conventional in nature. In those environments, it is not uncommon for members of armed groups, insurgents, and other belligerents to use or mimic established criminal networks, activities, and practices to move contraband, raise funds, or generally or specifically further their goals and objectives. Assessing the impact of criminal activity on military operations and deconflicting that activity from other threat or environmental factors can be essential to effective targeting and mission success.

3-114.   Military police commanders and provost marshals at all echelons are typically responsible for the police intelligence operations function. As such, each one must determine the best way to employ the available staff resources to integrate and monitor the execution of police intelligence operations activities within their commands.

3-115.   Military police units and provost marshals coordinate with USACIDC units to incorporate data that is developed by USACIDC programs, assessments, and analysis, ensuring that criminal information is released according to existing controls and constraints. These data sources include—

- The Combating Terrorism Program as outlined in AR 525-13 and CID Regulation 195-1.
- The Criminal Intelligence Program.
- Personal security vulnerability assessments.
- A crime threat analysis.
- Logistics security threat assessments.
- Constant liaison and communication with the higher echelon S-2/G-2; military information support operations units; host nation police and other law enforcement agencies; joint, combined, interagency, and multinational forces; the staff judge advocate; the civil-military operations center; civil affairs teams; and the force protection officer.

OPERATIONS PROCESS

3-116.   The police intelligence operations function represents military police capability to collect, analyze, and process relevant police information from many sources, generally associated with policing activities and military police operations. Police intelligence operations are a continuous process used by military police to collect, analyze, and disseminate police information and police intelligence on infrastructure, systems, populations, and individuals gathered while conducting military police operations. Information is collected and analyzed from a policing viewpoint. Information and intelligence from other operational elements are fused with information collected by military police and contribute to the common operational picture. Police information and subsequent police intelligence obtained in the execution of three military police disciplines   (police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support) are integrated to help shape a complete view of the operational environment that drives future operations across all military police disciplines. Information collected through the execution of police intelligence operations is disseminated throughout the military police community and is likewise pushed into Army intelligence through the operations process. This continuous flow of police information and intelligence into the operations process ensures the development of a holistic common operational picture for commanders and staffs (see figure 3-1, page 3-25). Police intelligence operations integration into the operations process through its three integrating processes (intelligence preparation of the battlefield, targeting, and risk management) are outlined in the following paragraphs.

Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

3-117.   The intelligence preparation of the battlefield is a systematic process of analyzing the threat and visualizing other aspects of the operational environment in a specific geographic area for a specific mission or in anticipation of a specific mission. Applying the intelligence preparation of the battlefield process helps unit commanders refine their operational plans to take advantage of enemy weaknesses and avoid enemy strengths. It also helps identify gaps in knowledge about the enemy and other aspects of the operational environment that can threaten operations and require focused collection efforts. Although the S-2/G-2 has the staff responsibility for the command's intelligence preparation of the battlefield, all staff members must understand and participate in the intelligence preparation of the battlefield process. Commanders and staffs develop intelligence preparation of the battlefield and apply it in all phases of the operations process. They ensure that there are tactics, techniques, and procedures in place for the continual assessment, development, and dissemination of intelligence preparation of the battlefield products.

3-118.   Police intelligence operations are a reciprocating effort that feeds and draws from intelligence preparation of the battlefield to help commanders understand their environment, mitigate vulnerabilities, and exploit opportunities. During the intelligence preparation of the battlefield process, the S-2/G-2, S-3/G-3, and staff use all available databases, intelligence sources, products, and related military disciplines to analyze the threat and other aspects of the operational environment. In addition to the tactical information that may be obtained through the conduct of police intelligence networks, the police intelligence operations function provides additional information on possible criminal threats and threats to social order that may support or drive current operations and change the friendly threat posture.

3-119.   Military police closely examine civil considerations that can affect military operations and social order, such as the factors of POLICE (see ATTP 3-39.20). This assessment of the police or criminal environment supports the development of information requirements, some of which may become commander's critical information requirements. This assessment also shapes the military police approach to all military police missions throughout the area of operations. For example, a military police unit with a security and mobility support mission seeks to leverage host nation or multinational police support (police engagement) along the lines of communication to minimize their exposure to threat surveillance while identifying crime-conducive conditions and evidence of organized criminal activity in the sector. This approach becomes routine even as military police maintain security and remain vigilant for information that answers other commander's critical information requirements.

3-120.   After reviewing the intelligence preparation of the battlefield products or outputs, a military police commander may be directed to provide security and mobility support in a neighborhood that is known to support threat elements. Military police engage other police personnel or organizations in, or adjacent to, the operational area to collect relevant information. They may conduct joint patrols as they engage the local population for information in a random or deliberate manner. They also coordinate with adjacent military forces in, or adjacent to, the area of operations. Information obtained during police engagement may validate or reinforce assumptions that were made during the initial intelligence preparation of the battlefield about the criminal or civil environment. Biometric personal identity data that is collected at a joint police checkpoint during police operations might immediately identify a criminal or threat actor while confirming the trafficking patterns and trends of contraband. This information is rapidly disseminated through common user information systems to enhance the common operational picture and update existing intelligence preparation of the battlefield templates.

3-121.   A military police commander conducting host nation police training and support activities in support of a stability operation may direct a criminal demographic survey of all criminals detained in the indigenous police station jails to verify humane treatment, initiate due process improvements, and gather criminal information. The results of these surveys may reveal criminal trends and patterns committed by the host nation police that have a chilling effect on an entire neighborhood. Further information is gathered through police and civil leader engagement, S-2 channels, and interviews with other criminal detainees to develop focused operations supporting integrated police strategies to target criminal perpetrators and reduce crime-conducive conditions.

The Targeting Process

3-122.   *Targeting* is the process of selecting and prioritizing targets and matching the appropriate response to them, considering operational requirements and capabilities. (JP 3-0) Targeting methods can range from lethal engagement to nonlethal weapons and informational engagements. Targeting begins in the planning phase and continues throughout the operation.

3-123.   The collection of police information and the production of police intelligence enable a fused overall intelligence picture and provide enhanced support to the targeting analysis process. The police information and intelligence provided to the process may result in a neighborhood, business, or residence being targeted for further control or exploitation to collect additional intelligence, capture criminal elements, and provide improved security for residents in the area.

3-124.   Recent developments in biometric technology and the introduction of evidence collection and forensic examination of incident scenes and collected material within operational environments outside the United States have proven the effectiveness and relevance of police intelligence operations and its ability to provide timely, accurate, and actionable intelligence to the geographic combatant commander within an operational environment. The technical capabilities and knowledge of complex criminal networks and activities leveraged by military police and USACIDC assets provide methods and reachback previously overlooked by the Army as a whole. Results emanating from these capabilities directly feed the targeting process and facilitate decisions to respond with a tactical offensive effort or policing efforts within the context of the rule of law.

3-125.   Within the Army, targeting is typically understood within the context of military operations against a foreign threat. Identifying criminal threats and initiating action against those threats, within the context of policing and protecting U.S. personnel and infrastructure, follow the same basic methodology. While

conducting law enforcement at bases and base camps, police intelligence operations are critical in understanding the criminal environment, developing linkages between criminal networks and actors, establishing critical correlations in time and space, or identifying trends and patterns in criminal activity. These variables are valuable in narrowing the scope of policing activities and investigations so that persons of interest can be identified and interviewed, locations or material can be identified for examination and collection for evidentiary value, and criminal threats can be appropriately targeted for further investigation and apprehension.

Risk Management

3-126.   *Risk management* is the process of identifying, assessing, and controlling, risks arising from operational factors and making decisions that balance risk cost with mission benefits (JP 3-0). Police information and intelligence resulting from police intelligence activities may identify risks before they manifest themselves. These risks may be conventional, criminal, or environmental. The continuous flow of information and intelligence from military police and USACIDC elements into the Army operations process, to include the incorporation of risk management, can provide the early identification of potential hazards to friendly and civilian personnel and equipment, thus providing commanders and staffs time to properly assess the hazard, determine the risk to their personnel and equipment, and develop and implement control measures to mitigate the risk (see ADRP 5-0).

POLICE INFORMATION

3-127.   Police information flows continuously from the conduct of tactical military police operations and through the interpersonal information network established via police engagement and investigations. This information can originate from a multitude of sources and may be obtained through deliberate collection efforts or through passive collection by military police during the conduct of military police missions and activities. Typically, information is gathered to answer specific intelligence requirements. Occasionally, information may be collected that is not directly pertinent to specific intelligence requirements, but is recognized by the collector, staff, or other personnel as relevant to ongoing operations. This relevant information should be forwarded immediately through operational and command networks. Relevant information answers information requirements that are; accurate, timely, usable, complete, precise and reliable (see ADRP 6-0).

3-128.   Collection efforts range from conducting tactical reconnaissance and surveillance operations to processing information specific to police operations and investigations. Military police and USACIDC special agents collect and analyze information in response to requests for information, reviews of records and reports, assessments and inspections, complaints, criminal statistics, incidents, inquiries, biometric data, forensic evidence, and surveys of police and criminal environments. USACIDC specifically obtains information from—

- The Combating Terrorism Program as outlined in AR 525-13 and CID Regulation 195-1.
- Law enforcement agencies.
- Intelligence agencies.
- Personal security vulnerability assessments.
- Crime threat analysis.
- Logistics security threat assessments.
- Criminal investigations.
- Interviews and law enforcement interrogations.

3-129. Military police and USACIDC personnel also receive information from interaction and coordination with the higher echelon S-2/G-2; military information support operations units; host nation police and other law enforcement agencies; joint, combined, interagency, and multinational forces; the staff judge advocate; the civil-military operations center; civil affairs teams; and force protection officers. The collected information is collated and analyzed for trends, patterns, and associations that may be apparent or intuitive or that may emerge from the data. This information is shared or fused with intelligence to support the commander's information requirements and military decisionmaking process to support targeting, information operations, and mission command.

3-130. Even if police information has no apparent intelligence value, it may still aid intelligence analysts and staffs and identify trends, patterns, and associations from which enforcement gaps are identified and policing strategies are developed and focused. Biometric and forensic information can provide the precision needed for intelligence-driven operations, while vehicle registration and identification programs can track and inhibit the threat freedom of movement.

3-131. The organization and analysis of police information can help draw conclusions about criminal and asymmetric threats that often evade traditional center-of-gravity analysis because of their lack of organizational mass. However, these same criminal and threat actors must move and communicate among the population and are therefore vulnerable to dedicated processes of trend, pattern, association, and link analysis. The military police-unique organizational structure and training enable them to rapidly conduct numerous and frequent police engagements in a given area of operations, resulting in a high volume of police information that, when effectively assessed and analyzed, can result in predictive strategies and preemptive operations. When this information answers commander's critical information requirements, it can immediately become actionable and result in a focused operation. When police information is matched against established measures of effectiveness, it can signal a tipping point indicating the success or failure of a particular strategy or program supporting an effects-based approach to conditions setting or shaping operations.

Sources

3-132. Police information is derived from a myriad of sources. Military police Soldiers throughout the area of operations collect police information during deliberate reconnaissance operations, through technical police assessments, during interactions with the population, during patrol operations, and in the process of conducting criminal investigations. Military police also gather information from existing police databases and as databases that store information used for civil control measures, such as vehicle registration and driver's license.

Police Engagement

3-133. Police engagement can provide critical information regarding police operations or the operational environment. As military police patrols, USACIDC special agents, and leaders interacting with the population, community leaders, and other law enforcement agencies, they continuously obtain and share critical information relevant to tactical- and operational-level planning and execution. Police intelligence operations activities analyze this information and produce police intelligence to provide greater clarity and isolate trends, patterns, and associations that may not be obvious.

3-134. Transnational threats are often criminal-like in nature and may penetrate the seams between national and international security systems. Military police and USACIDC personnel at the strategic level engage unified action partners to identify, monitor, and defeat criminal networks capable of moving resources and contraband across and between national and transnational boundaries. The development of unified action law enforcement or investigative task forces at the operational or strategic levels may facilitate the sharing of police information that may result in evidence or relevant information when applied to criminal proceedings or intelligence supporting military operations. Police intelligence operations integrated into these activities provides the analysis of information obtained through inform and influence activities and cooperative efforts to produce police intelligence, enabling more informed and effective strategic-level decisions.

Criminal Investigations

3-135. Police intelligence operations can glean significant information resulting from criminal investigations. Criminal investigations include the collation of investigative information from case files that involve allegations and testimony from witnesses, suspects, and victims. All investigations follow some type of analytical framework based on facts and evidence that are used to draw conclusions and render decisions or judgments. The criminal investigative process used by military police investigators and USACIDC special agents can result in the immediate generation of police intelligence. This police intelligence can be derived through testimonial evidence or from high-quality information that has been vetted through the rigor of the criminal investigative process and that can offer significant support to

ongoing intelligence efforts. Police intelligence that is developed specifically in support of criminal investigations is typically referred to as *criminal intelligence*. Police operations can offer flexibility in gathering, sharing, or confirming facts and information.

Forensic Evidence and Biometric Data

3-136.   Identity information collected through biometric enrollment and forensics collection is matched to correlate known persons to threat activity through forensics analysis and the data stored within databases. This data is critical to military police operations, criminal investigations, targeting, protection efforts, and associated security activities. Police intelligence operations can capitalize on data obtained through forensic examination and analysis and biometric collection by fusing the information with other police information, police intelligence, and military intelligence during decisive action to fill critical gaps and intelligence requirements. The resulting police intelligence can significantly enhance policing and security efforts of military police and other Army elements.

Reconnaissance and Assessments

3-137.   Military police units perform deliberate collection missions across the range of military operations when directed by higher headquarters or to fulfill information requirements of their organic commander or provost marshal. This deliberate collection effort is usually integrated within ongoing police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support missions with the intent to collect information in support of military police operations and the operations process. Military police units may conduct route, zone, or area reconnaissance, surveillance, and countersurveillance to gain information to help guard against unexpected enemy attacks in the area of operations or to gain information critical to understanding, planning, and executing missions supporting civil security and civil control.

3-138.   Commanders and staffs must fully understand the capabilities and limitations of specific military police assets at their disposal. This ensures that the employment of these assets is within their capabilities and is on missions for which they have been trained and equipped. Although reconnaissance primarily relies on the human dynamic rather than technical means, the situation may require the collection of a higher degree of technical information than nonspecialized units possess. Military police reconnaissance efforts may be focused on technical assessments of the police and criminal environment, infrastructure, systems, persons, or specific incidents. These assessments may be in support of any number of police operations or detention missions that further support civil security and civil control efforts.

Military Police Patrols

3-139.   Police information can be collected as a result of passive or active (deliberate) collection efforts during the course of normal military police patrols. These patrols can be conducted during police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support. Passive collection occurs every time military police Soldiers engage with the people or environment in which they operate. They may discover information that has not been specifically requested, but recognize that it has value. That information is provided to commanders and staff, along with the details and circumstances of the discovery. Deliberate collection occurs when military police are directed to obtain specific information about an area or target. These requests may be tied to a commander's priority intelligence requirements, provost marshal intelligence requirements regarding the area of operations, or specific police investigations. These intelligence requirements will generally be briefed to military police Soldiers as part of their patrol briefing before mission execution. Postmission debriefs are critical to ensuring that information gathered by military police Soldiers on patrol is collected by the appropriate staff elements for timely dissemination and analysis.

3-140.   Within the context of law enforcement focusing on good order and discipline of U.S. military elements, persons may be motivated to pass information to military police by a sense of duty or justice, in hopes of leniency by law enforcement personnel, to obtain revenge against an individual, or because of many other human motivators. Within an operational environment where military police interact with host nation personnel, these individuals may be influenced by feelings of support for the overall U.S. goals, their hope for money or other support from multinational forces, or many other motivations of self-interest, such as fear of or revenge on people or groups who they perceive caused them harm. In all circumstances, it is

important to understand the motivation, and eventually the level of reliability, of the source of information about enemy and criminal activities.

Detention Operations

3-141.   Military police guard personnel continuously gather information via passive collection techniques. This passive collection stems from observing the activities, routines, and interactions of U.S. military prisoners or detainees. This collection can be visual or audible and requires attention to detail and significant and constant situational understanding on the part of military police Soldiers. Information collected by guard personnel is passed through the chain of command to the echelon S-2/G-2 as a result of established debriefing procedures.

3-142.   Within an operational environment, interrogations that are not law enforcement-related collection activities are executed by trained intelligence personnel. Military police are prohibited from interrogating detainees for purposes other than criminal investigations. Only trained interrogators or investigators are authorized to interrogate or interview detained or imprisoned individuals. Typically, only trained military police investigators or USACIDC special agents may interview individuals or conduct law enforcement interrogations for specific law enforcement investigation purposes.

Analysis and Dissemination

3-143.   Analysis is an activity to determine the significance of the information relative to information and intelligence already known and the development of logical deductions about the probable meaning of the evaluated information. Analysis is critical in vetting and organizing collected raw information into usable police information and intelligence. Analysis within police intelligence operations enables military police to understand police organizations and systems as well as the criminal environment in which military police and other U.S. forces operate. Within the context of criminal investigations, police intelligence operations analysis assists investigators in understanding criminal relationships and helps to establish links between known or suspected criminals or criminal organizations.

3-144.   The analysis of police information varies, depending on the specific intelligence requirements to be fulfilled. Police intelligence operations analysts use common analytic techniques applied to answer requirements specific to policing organizations and systems, the criminal environment, and criminal investigative gaps and considerations (see ATTP 3-39.20). Military police staffs should have a trained police intelligence operations analyst, typically within the operations section, to provide specific analytical expertise to support police intelligence operations. Military police and USACIDC police intelligence operations analysts should attend, at a minimum, the Crime and Criminal Intelligence Analyst Course.

3-145.   Within a deployed operational environment, military police leaders continuously collect, organize, and interpret police/criminal information. Military police units continuously update internal tracking systems and report analyzed information and police intelligence to higher, lower, and other relevant units to facilitate the operations process. Data that is provided through analysis is used by military police within the intelligence preparation of the battlefield process to continuously analyze the threat and other aspects of the operational environment. The military police unit will—

- Update the previous police/criminal estimates provided to the S-2/G-2.
- Identify new or potential criminal threats, networks, and trends in the area of operations.
- Recommend protection level changes to the supported commander.
- Notify adjacent units of the potential criminal threat, network, or trend that may affect their forces.
- Reprioritize military police operations and support to the identified threat area.
- Share the information with host nation/local police and other agencies as appropriate.

3-146.   When reporting tactical information obtained from an operation, the military police unit will—

- Forward the information to the higher headquarters S-2/G-2.
- Forward the information to the military police chain of command, which integrates it into the military police portion of the intelligence preparation of the battlefield process and takes appropriate action.
- Notify other relevant units of the potential threat that may affect their forces.

3-147. Within the context of law enforcement operations in support of U.S. military bases and base camps, police and criminal information is analyzed by police intelligence operations analysts within the provost marshal's office or supporting USACIDC organizations. Crime and Criminal Intelligence Analyst Course-trained analysts focus their efforts on crime trends, measures of effectiveness, and specific criminal investigations and threats. Analyzed information and police intelligence are used internally to shape operations and aid investigators working specific criminal investigations. The data is also shared throughout the law enforcement community as needed, within applicable legal constraints. ATTP 3-39.20 provides an in-depth discussion of legal restrictions regarding the dissemination of law enforcement information pertaining to U.S. citizens. Police intelligence operations analysts assigned to military police battalions and brigades should be tasked to augment provost marshal staffs at home station to support law enforcement efforts and to develop and maintain analytical skill sets.

Chapter 4

Support to Army Operations

Military police support Army operations through the integration of the military police disciplines. These disciplines are applied through the elements of combat power to support combined arms operations. This chapter describes military police combat power applications that are linked through the mission command, movement and maneuver, intelligence, fires, sustainment, and protection warfighting functions. Military police missions that are synchronized through the warfighting functions contribute significant combat power (lethal and nonlethal) to decisive action tasks. Decisive action that is conducted simultaneously combines offensive, defensive, and stability or DSCA tasks. Army forces adapt to the requirements of the operational environment, conduct operations within it, and operate through ever-changing combinations of decisive action using synchronized action, joint interdependent capabilities, and mission command. The Army defeats enemies on land using offensive and defensive operations and engages the population and civil authorities in the area of operations through stability or DSCA operations. The effort accorded to each task is proportional to the mission and varies with the situation.

SUPPORT TO COMBINED ARMS OPERATIONS

4-1. The Army operational concept is unified land operations and commanders achieve success by integrating the four foundations of unified land operations: mission command, decisive action (offensive, defensive, and stability or DSCA), the Army corps competencies (combined arms maneuver and wide area security), and initiative. Army forces combine offensive, defensive, and stability or DSCA simultaneously as part of an interdependent joint force to seize, retain, and exploit the initiative; to gain and maintain a position of relative advantage during sustained land operations; and to prevent, deter, prevail in war, and create for favorable conflict resolution. They employ synchronized action—lethal and nonlethal— proportional to the mission and stay informed by a thorough understanding of all variables of the operational environment. (See ADRP 3-0 for additional information on unified land operations.)

4-2. Combat power depends on combined arms to achieve its full destructive, disruptive, informational, and constructive potential. Combined arms are the synchronized and simultaneous application of arms to achieve an effect greater than if each arm were used separately or sequentially. (ADRP 3-0) Applying combat power is the way that Army leaders conceptualize capabilities. Combat power has eight elements— leadership, information, mission command, movement and maneuver, intelligence, fires, sustainment, and protection. The Army employs combat power through combined arms operations. Combined arms operations are organized through tailoring and task-organizing Army forces to optimize the elements of combat power for a particular mission. Military police operations are synchronized to support combined arms through the warfighting functions.

4-3. Military police operations contribute significant combat power—lethal and nonlethal—to all decisive action tasks. Based on an analysis of the mission variables, the BCTs will be task-organized with required military police capabilities to meet mission requirements. For offensive and defensive tasks, the military police task organization may consist of a military police company or battalion headquarters to provide the necessary mission command for military police units and capabilities augmenting the BCT. Other, more technically specialized military police capabilities provide general support to BCT requirements for security and mobility support. These same capabilities may be employed at division, corps, and theater echelons to enable mission command, force mobility, protection, and sustainment. Stability operations generally require a shift in focus for military police to military police disciplines requiring a greater degree

of technical capability—police operations and detention operations. As requirements for military police technical capabilities increase and the uniform application of those capabilities across the entire area of operations becomes critical (generally as stability operations become dominant), the consolidation of military police assets and capabilities under the mission command of military police battalions and brigades within the division, corps, and theater echelon may be required to ensure the integration and synchronization of military police technical capabilities across the area of operations.

4-4.   Lethal force is at the heart of offensive and defensive actions, and its application is critical to success in these operations. However, the use of nonlethal actions is becoming increasingly important. Today's threat operates from populated areas, wary of U.S. combat capabilities and welcoming the potential collateral damage to noncombatants when combat erupts. The adversary may use information propaganda effectively to dramatize any harm inflicted on noncombatants by friendly forces. There is an inherent complementary relationship between the use of lethal force and the application of military nonlethal effects, actions, and capabilities to achieve results through less coercive means.

4-5.   Although each situation requires a different mix of force responses, when used together, lethal and nonlethal actions complement each other and create new dilemmas for the opponent. The result of nonlethal actions in situations where the use of lethal force would be counterproductive, or where its use might result in unintended consequences and/or noncombatant casualties, denies the enemy this propaganda tool. Military police units from the force pool can provide critical nonlethal capabilities to support the range of military operations with the employment of a nonlethal capabilities set from pre-positioned theater stocks. Military police also bring significant capability and experience operating within the restrictive use of force parameters. Military police are inherently adept at implementing escalation-of-force criteria due to their law enforcement training and experience.

4-6.   Every unit, regardless of type, generates combat power and contributes to the operation. A variety of military police capabilities and unit types contribute combat power. As discussed earlier, military police disciplines are military police-interrelated areas of expertise, grouped together to help joint force commanders integrate, synchronize, and direct military police operations. Tasks within these disciplines are each aligned with a specific warfighting function (see FM 7-15). Refer to chapter 3 in ADRP 3-0 for a full discussion of combat power and the warfighting functions.

4-7.   Alignment within the warfighting functions provides the framework for military police tasks in the Army Universal Task List. While these functional relationships reflect the primary task alignments, the military police disciplines, in reality, have a much broader range of influence and support. The subordination of a task beneath a specific warfighting function does not negate its relevance within another warfighting function. The military police disciplines collectively support all of the warfighting functions, and each military police discipline is applied within one or more of the warfighting functions. An analysis of tasks within the Army universal task list reflects a primary (not all-inclusive) alignment of each military police discipline as follows:

- Police operations are primarily focused on protection.
- Detention operations is primarily linked to protection.
- Security and mobility support is primary focused on movement and maneuver and protection.

APPLICATION OF MILITARY POLICE COMBAT POWER THROUGH THE WARFIGHTING FUNCTIONS

4-8.   The warfighting functions provide military police commanders a common framework within which to link the required military police disciplines and their respective capabilities to the synchronized application of combined arms. Figure 4-1 highlights the integration of military police combat power across the warfighting functions and identifies the primary and secondary relationship of each discipline to each warfighting function. The following text will link the military police disciplines to the warfighting functions and show how military police disciplines support the geographic combatant commander across the range of military operations.
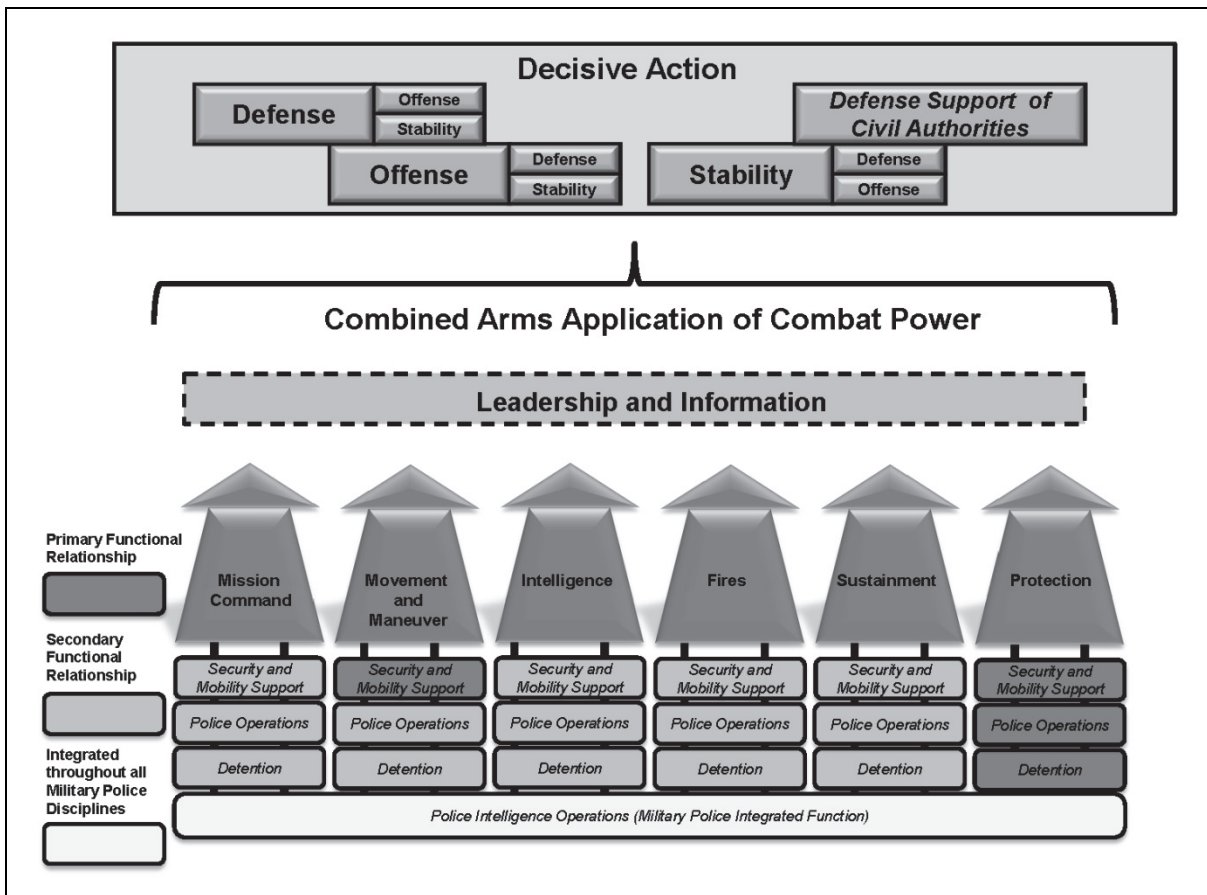
Figure 4-1. Application of military police combat power

MISSION COMMAND

4-9. The *mission command warfighting function* is the related tasks and systems that develop and integrate those activities enabling a commander to balance the art of command and the science of control to integrate the other warfighting functions. (ADRP 3-0) Through mission command, commanders integrate and synchronize operations. Commanders, supported by their staffs, exercise mission command throughout the conduct of operations. Mission command is the exercise of authority and direction by the commander using mission orders to enable disciplined initiative within the commanders' intent to empower agile and adaptive leaders in the conduct of unified land operations. This philosophy of command helps commanders capitalize on the climate of trust and professional judgment of subordinates to take action to develop the situation and integrate military operations to achieve the commander's intent and desired end state. Mission command emphasizes centralized intent and dispersed execution through disciplined initiative. This precept guides leaders toward mission accomplishment. (See ADRP 6-0 for information on mission command.)

4-10. Military police plan, integrate, synchronize, and execute missions and activities across all six warfighting functions, to include those tasks aligned with the mission command warfighting function. Military police support mission command through a myriad of command- and staff-related tasks. Most of these tasks are not specific to military police, although they execute these tasks to ensure adequate support at strategic, operational, and tactical levels throughout the operational environment. Asset management and prioritization are some of the most critical challenges for commanders and staffs in the operational environment. A lack of military police resources may be typical in the operational environment and impede the commander from executing all identified tasks. Careful prioritization must occur. Even more challenging is that, once in the area of operations, force-tailored military police units

must be able to rapidly transition among elements of operations. Because the available force-tailored military police units are designed for more specific types of tasks, military police capabilities must be shifted within the area of operations to match the operational component requirements and the capabilities of modular military police units. For military police units, consideration must also be given to administration and support, to include the control of resources and equipment, personnel management, unit logistics, individual and unit training, readiness, mobilization, demobilization, discipline, and other matters not included in the operational missions, but inherent in administrative control responsibilities.

4-11. Military police assets are typically extremely limited, especially when those assets are leveraged against high-demand, technical policing disciplines, such as detention operations or police operations support to host nation police for civil security and civil control requirements during stability. Commanders favor decentralized control wherever possible. It is the doctrinal solution to uncertainty and increased tempo. However, decentralized control is not appropriate in all cases. Centralized control is better for managing scarce resources, especially those that can produce effects throughout the area of operations. It may also be necessary to mass effects decisively in some cases. Centralized control is also suitable for operations in which greater-than-normal coordination—within the force or with other Service or nation forces—is involved (see ADRP 6-0).

4-12. The negative impacts of unsynchronized and inconsistent application of detainee operations or efforts to build host nation policing capability across an area of operations or joint operations area can have significant strategic implications and cause major delays in operational benchmarks for success. When extensive and long-term military police technical capabilities and uniform effect are required across an area of operations or joint operations area, military police brigade mission command of military police assets is required to ensure the technical oversight, synchronization, coordination, and consistent application of military police capabilities. This is especially true when stability tasks are dominant within the area of operations.

4-13. All military police units must execute mission command and the operations process activities for their own unit and interact with the mission command activities of supported units. This interaction may be primarily through a military police staff assigned to the supported unit or through staff counterparts. In some cases, a supported unit may not have assigned military police staff, and the supporting unit will provide this support as well. This relationship and degree of interaction is determined by many factors, including the type of unit and echelon being supported and the command or support relationship established. (See ADRP 5-0 for an in-depth discussion of Army command and support relationships.)

4-14. Military police capabilities are integrated throughout the levels of war by a combination of military police commands and integrated staff positions. Military police serve in varying levels of command and staff throughout their career and provide the expertise to integrate functions. Provost marshal sections are organic within the BCT, MEB, division, and corps staff designs. (Chapter 5 discusses the military police staff integration into Army staffs and their responsibilities.)

PROVOST MARSHAL

4-15. Commanders exercise control over assigned forces in their area of operations. The staff has the primary function of assisting the commander, and subordinate commanders exercise control. Control allows commanders to direct the execution of operations. Unlike command functions, which remain relatively similar among echelons of command, control functions increase in complexity at each higher echelon. As the control function becomes increasingly complex, units are typically assigned larger staffs to ensure integration through the warfighting functions and synchronization of combat power. The staff assigned to BCT, division, corps, theater Army, and other joint organizations includes a number of military police personnel in various sections and cells.

4-16. The senior military police officer on the staff is typically designated as the provost marshal and is responsible for assisting the commander in exercising control over military police forces in the area of operations. The provost marshal is responsible for coordinating military police assets and operations for the command. The commander typically designates the provost marshal as a personal staff officer for law enforcement issues concerning U.S. military forces and U.S. personnel. This ensures appropriate sensitivity and security regarding criminal investigations and personal information. Each echelon, down

to brigade level, has an organic provost marshal and staff element to integrate military police forces. The provost marshal office is typically aligned within the operations section (S-3/G-3). In division and higher staffs, the provost marshal cell may be further assigned to the protection cell. Regardless, the provost marshal cell has significant coordination requirements with other staff elements to ensure that military police assets are employed properly and that military police capabilities support the commander's intent and stated requirements in an efficient and effective manner.

4-17. A senior military police unit commander may be dual-hatted as a commander and provost marshal to a maneuver commander, although the echelon commander may choose to designate the military police unit commander as his provost marshal based on experience, mission, or other variables. Military police planners are assigned within all BCT, MEB, division, and corps staff designs. Ultimately, the decision on whether the senior military unit commander will serve in both roles will be made by each supported force commander based on the specific situation. Some specific considerations for determining the relationships of the senior military police staff advisor and the senior military police unit commander and determining which individual will be designated as the echelon provost marshal include—

- What staff assets are available to support the military police staff advisor versus the military police unit commander? Are these elements from the same unit, or are separate units resourced for each role?
- What experience level is needed for the military police staff advisor? Should this role be resourced with a current or former commander?
- How long will the augmenting military police unit, commanded by the senior military police unit commander, be working for or with the force? Is there enough time for this military police commander to acclimate and effectively advise the force commander?
- What working relationship is established between an existing military police staff advisor and the force commander? Similarly, is there an existing working relationship between the military police unit commander and the force commander?

Brigade Combat Team Provost Marshal

4-18. Each BCT is organized with an organic military police staff section. The military police staff section supports the BCT and its subordinate organizations, while focusing on military police operations within the BCT. It also provides the framework for planning military police augmentation to the BCT.

4-19. The BCT provost marshal is responsible for coordinating military police operations and is the senior military police officer in the BCT, unless augmented by a more senior military police unit commander. If a military police battalion is task-organized in support of the BCT, the BCT commander will determine if a change will occur in provost marshal designation. This decision is based on the duration of the task organization and the focus of the mission being performed by the supporting military police battalion. It is important for the military police battalion commander and the BCT provost marshal to coordinate the planning and execution of military police operations that support the BCT. For the maneuver battalion level inside the BCT, the provost marshal plans and recommends military police support. The provost marshal performs the following tasks that support the planning of military police operations:

- Provides organizational focus for organic and augmenting military police units.
- Synchronizes military police support across the entire brigade.
- Coordinates and prioritizes tasks across the military police disciplines.
- Integrates specified and implied military police tasks into brigade planning.
- Coordinates and prioritizes MWD support.

4-20. The BCT provost marshal is normally located in the BCT main. However, if the BCT is located in some type of sanctuary and the tactical command post is deployed forward, the provost marshal may be located in the tactical command post. The primary duty of the provost marshal is to plan, coordinate, and facilitate the execution of military police missions in support of the commander's scheme of maneuver. In this role, the provost marshal must—

- Integrate the military police disciplines into future brigade plans.
- Develop the necessary input to BCT orders, annexes, and military police unit orders.

- Make time-sensitive military police decisions on requests for immediate tactical support received from BCT tactical commanders.
- Train the provost marshal cell located at the brigade main command post.
- Formulate and recommend schemes of military police support to meet the BCT commander's intent.
- Visualize the future state of military police operations in the BCT.
- Recommend the military police priorities of effort and support, essential tasks, and acceptable mission risks to the BCT commander.
- Determine and evaluate critical aspects of the military police situation.
- Determine what military police missions must be accomplished to support current and future fights.
- Integrate the organic military police platoon in the planning process and explain the significant contributions of military police functions to combat power.
- Develop a scheme of military police operations concurrent with the BCT maneuver courses of action.
- Integrate the necessary orders and instructions into higher headquarters plans and orders.
- Issue timely instructions and orders to organic and augmenting military police units through the BCT base order to simplify preparation and integration.
- Monitor the execution of military police orders and instructions by tracking the current fight.
- Alter the military police plan using the feedback received from maneuver battalions, the military police platoon, and any augmenting military police units as required.
- Identify any BCT requirements for echelons-above-brigade military police and other related assets to support the brigade.
- Make the BCT commander aware of the capabilities, limitations, and employment considerations of organic and augmenting military police and related assets.
- Recommend the military police organization for combat.
- Plan, coordinate, and resource military police operations within the BCT staff.
- Advise the commander on—
  - Using organic and augmenting military police assets.
  - Employing police operations capabilities.
  - Employing detention operations capabilities.
  - Employing security and mobility support capabilities.
  - Integrating police intelligence operations.
- Produce detention operations planning and overlays that show temporary holding areas and the flow of detainees or dislocated civilians.
- Assist the S-2 with the intelligence preparation of the battlefield, including information from police intelligence operations.
- Participate in appropriate working groups.
- Provide information on the status of military police assets on hand.
- Track and report changes to main supply route information.
- Recommend main supply route regulation enforcement measures.
- Recommend protection measures for logistics areas.
- Advise the commander on policing and corrections as they relate to the rule of law and stability tasks.
- Recommend when specialized military police support (such as customs, investigative, or forensics support) may be required.

Echelons-Above-Brigade Provost Marshal

4-21. Depending on the echelon and type of unit, military police staff members may be assigned under the provost marshal section or within other staff sections. The provost marshal is typically assigned

within the operations section, although depending on the mission and focus, the provost marshal may be assigned to the logistics section (more common in joint staffs) or a separate section. Even though the division or corps headquarters may serve as a joint task force headquarters, the division provost marshal and corps provost marshal staff duties and responsibilities are similar to those listed previously for the brigade provost marshal. Regardless of mission, every Army staff has common areas of expertise that determine how commanders divide duties and responsibilities. Grouping related activities by the area of expertise gives commanders an effective span of control. It also facilitates unified effort by the staff. Areas of expertise may vary slightly, depending on the command echelon, the mission, and the operational environment. For example, at the battalion level there is normally no resource manager, and certain logistics units combine the intelligence and operations areas of expertise. As previously mentioned, the section of assignment and grouping of the military police staff varies among echelons and unit types.

MOVEMENT AND MANEUVER

4-22. The *movement and maneuver warfighting function* is the related tasks and systems that move and employ forces to achieve a position of relative advantage over the enemy and other threats. Direct fire and close combat are inherent in maneuver. (ADRP 3-0) This warfighing function includes those tasks associated with force projection relegated to gaining position of advantage over the enemy.

4-23. Military police support that is applied through the movement and maneuver warfighting function is primarily executed through security and mobility support. Military police units are an integral part of a the ability of the combined arms unit to maneuver. The maneuver warfighing function is focused on support to close operating forces. Military police units enhance force momentum by controlling the movement of forces across the area of operations to make the most efficient use of the space and time necessary to generate mass and speed, while denying enemy maneuver. By enhancing the ability to maneuver, military police units accelerate the concentration of combat power, increasing the velocity and tempo of the force necessary to exploit critical enemy vulnerabilities. By executing security and mobility support, military police units limit enemy ability to generate harassing attacks and help preserve the combat force for the main effort by preventing the enemy disruption of movement that would cause a tactical commander to divert combat forces. Police intelligence operations integrated within military police operations support movement and maneuver through the collection, analysis, and dissemination of police information and intelligence gathered by military police teams and military police staff. The results of police intelligence operations can provide critical and timely information regarding criminal activity or conditions within the operational environment that can threaten friendly operations or impede the freedom of movement.

4-24. Military police units supporting movement and maneuver include those capabilities organic to, and task-organized within, the BCTs and MEBs. Functional military police brigade support will be required when the mission requires more than two military police battalions to support the freedom of maneuver and protection of the combined arms team.

4-25. Security and mobility support tasks that are performed in support of the movement and maneuver warfighting function may include—
- Supporting gap-crossing (wet or dry), breaching, and passage-of-lines operations.
- Providing straggler movement control.
- Controlling the movement of dislocated civilians.
- Conducting route reconnaissance and security.
- Conducting main supply route regulation enforcement.
- Conducting population and resource control.
- Conducting movement corridor operations.
- Conducting reconnaissance operations.
- Conducting response force operations and critical site, asset, and high-risk personnel security.
- Conducting base defense operations.

- Provide protection and physical security.
- Conduct antiterrorism operations.

INTELLIGENCE

4-26. The *intelligence warfighting function* is the related tasks and systems that facilitate understanding of the enemy, terrain, and civil considerations. (ADRP 3-0) Police intelligence operations directly supports the intelligence warfighting function and tasks associated with surveillance and reconnaissance task. Commanders make decisions and direct actions based on their common operational picture. They keep their common operational picture current by continuously assessing the situation and stating the information they need in the commander's critical information requirements. The required information is obtained through various detection methods and systematic observation, reconnaissance, and surveillance. Military police capabilities can be employed during key activities in the operations process to add to the commander's common operational picture.

4-27. Tactical and technical police information collected as part of deliberate collection efforts, such as military police reconnaissance missions conducted during security and mobility support or assessments during police operations, provide relevant police information regarding the operational environment. Subsequent analysis and dissemination of police information and police intelligence improve geographic combatant commander understanding of enemy actions, dislocated civilians in the area of operations and their movement, and trends within the police and criminal environment that may affect the operational plan. Military police information generated can also provide data that contributes to answering specific commander's critical information requirements. As an integrated function, police intelligence operations activities pull and push information and police intelligence from all three military police disciplines— police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support—to provide input to the common operational picture. Police intelligence operations activities are an important part of the surveillance and reconnaissance.

4-28. Military police responsibilities in support of the intelligence effort and the common operational picture include—

- Provide military police staff planning and coordination to support intelligence collection in conjunction with execution of military police operations.
- Perform route reconnaissance and surveillance to fulfill information requirements and to advise the commander on primary and alternate route status and potential movement disruptions.
- Perform military police reconnaissance in conjunction with security and mobility support to collect threat information and identify conditions affecting the operational plan.
- Conduct police assessments during police operations and detention operations.
- Establish police intelligence policies and procedures to be executed during military police operations.
- Execute program management for police intelligence collected during military police operations.
- Serve as a member of the intelligence working groups.
- Coordinate system requirements, such as communications, technology, hardware, and software.

Contributions to the Intelligence Warfighting Function

4-29. Military police provide a vast array of information as a result of deliberate and passive collection efforts. Information that results from the execution of military police operations falls into the following areas:

- Avenues and routes for joint forces and likely enemy avenues of approach.
- Unit movement along the main supply route and alternate supply routes.
- Information threats to airfields and ports.
- Enemy and criminal network activity in the area of operations.
- Crime-conducive conditions.
- Law enforcement gaps and mechanisms.
- Information on urban operations and other complex terrain.

- Information on high-payoff targets.
- Viability of lines of communication and main supply routes and potential protection of base camps.
- Identification of potential detention or resettlement sites, enemy landing zones, and dislocated-civilian evacuation routes.
- Route reconnaissance that is focused on route choke points, ambush sites, temporary holding sites, and traffic flow.
- Area reconnaissance that is focused on criminal intelligence, alternate route identification, and dislocated-civilian movement.
- Gap-crossing and passage-of-lines reconnaissance that is focused on determining requirements for a main supply route, temporary holding sites, traffic control, strong points, and maintenance rest halts.
- Area reconnaissance that is focused on establishing protective measures of high-risk facilities.
- Area reconnaissance that is performed in support of urban combat operations.
- Reconnaissance that establishes an initial assessment of infrastructure factors for detention or resettlement missions.
- Police assessments that determine the capabilities and capacity in specified areas of police and prison operations.
- Infrastructure surveys that support policing and corrections operations.

4-30. Military police contributions to the intelligence preparation of the battlefield and intelligence analysis include the standards, processes, Soldiers, and equipment required to generate, manage, analyze, and disseminate police information and intelligence necessary to enable optimum situational understanding for the command. These efforts are included in the police intelligence operations integrated function. Combined with other intelligence, police information, police intelligence, and criminal intelligence provide more knowledge of the criminal aspects within the area of operations and improve and broaden the intelligence available to support the commander in decisionmaking.

4-31. Police intelligence operations include—
- Identifying gaps in criminal and police data and developing collection plans.
- Managing police intelligence activities.
- Establishing intelligence requirements to drive the collection of police information.
- Inputting field-collected and partner-added information.
- Validating, extracting, analyzing, fusing, and producing relevant data and products for intelligence and police intelligence products or operations.
- Providing police information and intelligence for the common operational picture and battle command systems.
- Integrating and synchronizing police information and intelligence information with other staff.
- Managing databases and disseminating police information and intelligence.

4-32. Technology provides the capability to use and combine police intelligence data in various ways to create customized products. Analysis software allows the police intelligence analyst (using tools such as automated link diagrams or association matrices) to quickly make more complex connections between different types of data and information than previously possible. Police intelligence can now be combined with a wider variety of data, including that from other intelligence sources (such as signal intelligence and human intelligence) through collaborative processes to provide more accurate, comprehensive, and relevant products.

4-33. Police information and intelligence resulting from police operations contribute significantly to the overall understanding of the operational environment. Police information and intelligence obtained during the execution of police operations are especially relevant during counterinsurgency and stability tasks. Military police, day-to-day interaction with the local population, host nation police, and unified action partners policing organizations results in a significant amount of critical information. This information may be police-related, relevant to policing and criminal investigative requirements, and/or valuable to the tactical commander for protection and targeting purposes.

4-34. The detention operations discipline supports the intelligence warfighting function by providing tactical and police intelligence information obtained through passive collection by military police Soldiers as they interact with detainees in the transport or guard phases of detention operations. While military police do not typically perform interrogations or active collection measures within the context of the detention operations discipline, observations and information obtained from personnel during the execution of detention tasks frequently adds critical information to the overall intelligence collection effort. When conducting criminal investigations, USACIDC and military police investigator personnel may conduct law enforcement interrogations of detainees within any detention facility.

4-35. Route reconnaissance conducted by military police within the security and mobility support discipline provides critical information about the condition of main supply routes and alternate supply routes, friendly troop movement along the routes, possible interference from dislocated civilians, and tactical information about enemy actions along the supply routes. In the security and mobility support role, military police units are spread across the area of operations and have the communications capability to immediately report police information with potential intelligence value.

4-36. Military police reconnaissance capabilities range from these tactical reconnaissance tasks, to highly technical assessments regarding investigative and forensic capabilities (see figure 4-2). During stability tasks reconnaissance conducted by military police is normally conducted with a specialized, technical focus on policing and investigative aspects of the environment. As requirements for technical capabilities provided by military police increase (generally as stability tasks become dominant), the consolidation of military police assets and capabilities under the mission command of military police battalions and brigades within the division, corps, and theater echelon may be required to ensure the integration and synchronization of military police technical capabilities across the area of operations.
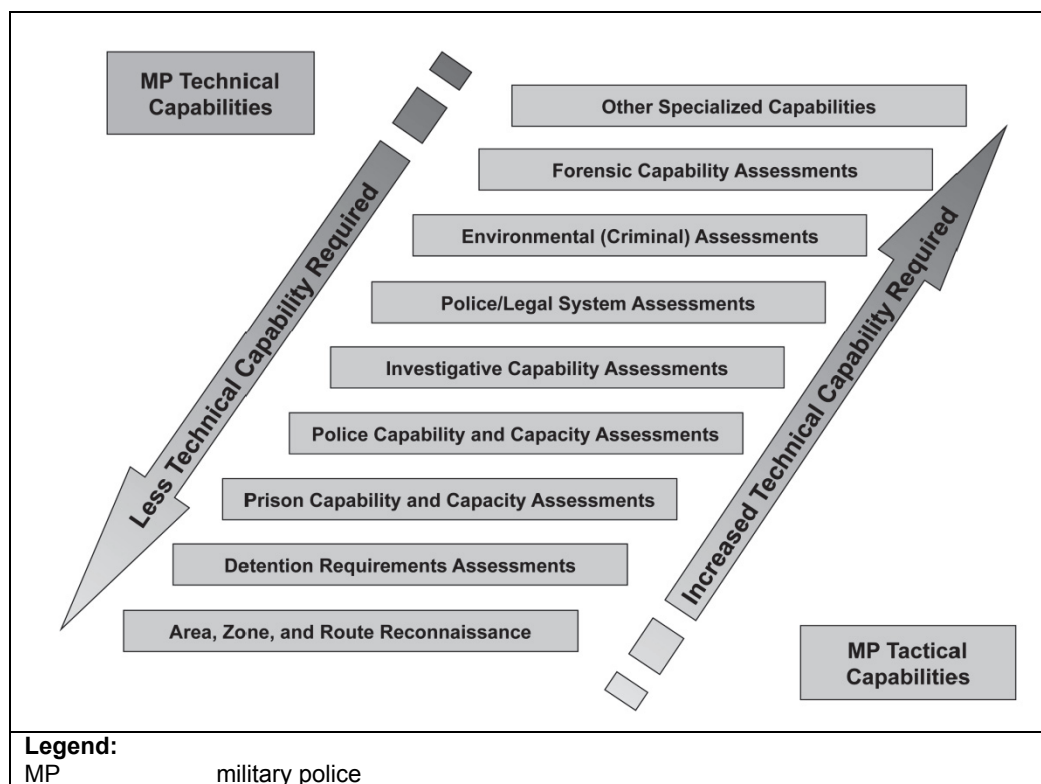
Figure 4-2. Military police reconnaissance capabilities

4-37. Military police reconnaissance is a deliberate information collection mission. Military police units may conduct route, zone, or area reconnaissance, surveillance, and countersurveillance to gain information to help guard against unexpected enemy attacks in the area of operations or to gain information critical to understanding, planning, and executing missions supporting civil security and civil control.

4-38. Military police reconnaissance efforts may also be focused on technical assessments of the police and criminal environment. These assessments may be in support of any number of police operations or detention operations that further support civil security and civil control efforts. They may be focused on infrastructure, systems, or persons. These technical assessments will generally attempt to provide information regarding POLICE.

4-39. The resulting information collected during military police reconnaissance missions are assessed, analyzed, and disseminated as police intelligence as appropriate. The police intelligence and unanalyzed police information identified as exceptional information and time-sensitive are continually fed into the operations process for use in military police planning and execution and fusion within Army operations at large.

4-40. The security and mobility support discipline also provides military police units executing patrol operations across the area of operations. These patrols bring military police Soldiers into contact with a host of friendly units, civilians on the battlefield, and other nongovernmental organizations. These contacts produce a significant amount of information that is collected and added to the tactical and police intelligence products through passive and deliberate collection. Military police perform reconnaissance to fulfill general and specific information requirements in support of the overall intelligence collection effort. Military police units play a major role in the process by anticipating and providing route reconnaissance information for main and alternate supply routes, airfields, seaports, and likely landing zones within the area of operations.

SUSTAINMENT

4-41. The *sustainment warfighting function* is the related tasks and systems that provide support and services to ensure freedom of action, extend operational reach, and prolong endurance. (ADRP 3-0) Military police operations missions that support sustainment operations may include—

- Collecting and disseminating police information and intelligence relevant to criminal and conventional threats against the sustainment base and logistics efforts.
- Executing law enforcement activities to prevent or deter criminal elements from disrupting logistics operations.
- Assessing and reporting battle damage along main supply routes and within movement corridors.
- Patrolling and maintaining security along main supply routes and adjacent terrain. This operation includes—
  - Conducting reconnaissance on roads and highways.
  - Providing security along and adjacent to main supply routes.
  - Enforcing traffic flow along main supply routes.
  - Protecting critical airfield facilities.
  - Protecting pipelines and tank farms.
  - Protecting fixed bridges.
- Providing military police convoy escort for designated critical supplies.
- Conducting area and base and base camp security.
- Conducting reconnaissance in support of operational area security of sustainment areas and other assigned areas.
- Conducting response force operations.

PROTECTION

4-42. The *protection warfighting function* is the related tasks and systems that preserve the force so that the commander can apply maximum combat power. (ADRP 3-0) The protection concept in today's operational environment includes protecting personnel (combatants and noncombatants) and physical aspects. In addition to safeguarding bases and base camps, securing routes, and protecting forces within sustainment areas, protection considerations are applied in support of battle positions, combat outposts, forward operating bases, and the host nation and other infrastructure support. Today's battlefield requires that

commanders know survivability tactics and techniques that provide this protection. (See ADRP 3-37 for additional information on the protection warfighting function.)

4-43. Military police units have organic equipment and personnel capabilities that are used to support protection efforts. Military police units provide support to the protection warfighting function through police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support. Security and mobility support operations provides a distribution of military police forces throughout the area of operations that conduct aggressive patrolling and military police reconnaissance to protect units, critical facilities, and high-risk personnel and to control civilian populations.

4-44. Police operations support the protection warfighting function by providing policing and the associated law enforcement activities to control and protect populations and resources and to facilitate the existence of a lawful and orderly environment. Police operations and the associated skills and capabilities inherent in that function provide the fundamental base upon which military police functions are framed and conducted. The following tasks support the protection warfighting function:

- Performing law enforcement.
- Conducting criminal investigations.
- Conducting traffic management and enforcement.
- Employing forensics capabilities.
- Conducting police engagement.
- Providing customs support.
- Providing host nation police development.
- Supporting civil law enforcement.
- Supporting border control, boundary security, and the freedom of movement.

4-45. The detention operations discipline supports the protection warfighting function by providing shelter, sustaining, guarding, protecting, and accounting for populations (detainees and U.S. military prisoners) as a result of military or civil conflict or to facilitate criminal prosecution. These operations inherently control the movement and activities of the population for security, safety, or intelligence gathering. The Army is the DOD executive agent for detainee operations and for the long-term confinement of U.S. military prisoners. The following support protection:

- Detainee operations.
- Internment of U.S. military prisoners.
- Host nation corrections training and support.

4-46. The security and mobility support discipline supports protection efforts by securing the main and alternate supply routes through aggressive patrolling and route reconnaissance to identify potential threats and hazards that could endanger U.S. forces or equipment. Military police may also be tasked to secure critical convoys to ensure safe transit. Functions in support of protection operations include the following military police tasks:

- Protecting against enemy activities within movement corridors and along main supply routes.
- Securing supply routes and critical convoys.
- Conducting reconnaissance and surveillance.
- Evaluating and recommending protective measures for high-risk facilities.
- Employing protective measures for high-risk individuals.
- Employing protective measures for designated supplies.
- Conducting operational area security.
- Conducting actions to control populations.
- Conducting response force operations.
- Applying antiterrorism measures.
- Conducting the resettlement of dislocated civilians.
- Implementing physical security measures.

4-47. When military police units perform protection tasks, survivability remains a key commander concern. Although the likelihood of major combat is reduced, key resources and personnel remain vulnerable to other types of hostile action or attack. Commanders must consider protecting vital resources (such as fuel sites, logistics convoys, base and base camps, and logistics support areas) since the entire area of operations has an equal potential for enemy attack; therefore, the priority of work will be more focused on protecting these types of resources. Vital resources requiring protection may also include facilities that are critical to the civilian infrastructure, such as key industrial sites, pipelines, water treatment plants, and government buildings.

4-48. The police intelligence operations function is integrated within police operations, detention operations, and security and mobility support missions supporting the protection warfighting function. The deliberate and passive collection of information obtained during ongoing interactions with host nation police/security personnel and the civilian population provides valuable police information and police intelligence critical to the protection of U.S. military personnel, equipment, and bases. ADRP 3-37 provides an in-depth discussion of the protection warfighting function.

OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

4-49. There are additional considerations for the employment of military police that may apply in special situations. This section discusses some of those considerations, to include participation in multinational security forces, transition to the rule of law, and other special situations.

MULTINATIONAL SECURITY FORCES

4-50. In addition to the joint security forces discussed earlier in the chapter, multinational and partner nations contributing forces to the operational area may bring in security forces that can contribute to the overall security and protection provided to facilities, personnel, and equipment. Joint security forces and multinational security forces do not possess identical capabilities. It is important to understand what functions each of these security forces bring with them so that they can be used to maximize the efficiency of their capability and to provide the right level of expertise to the missions and tasks assigned. One of the defining factors that can determine capability to perform certain functions and tasks is the manning and equipment of the unit. Their ability to shoot, move, and communicate is critical to selecting and assigning missions within their manning and equipment capabilities. Security forces without vehicles can best be used on static security posts, while vehicle- and communications-equipped security forces can better be used in a security and mobility support role. Army military police forces are best suited for direct and general support to maneuver forces. Other determining factors for multinational security forces are political considerations and sensitivities. Also, some units may be under a multinational agreement to participate only if used in certain locations or roles. It is important to honor those commitments.

TRANSITION TO THE RULE OF LAW

4-51. Planning for follow-on to major combat operations should begin in the early planning stages for war. Efforts to transition to the rule of law must start as soon as stability tasks begin, often simultaneously with major combat operations. First, the security conditions must be established and political conditions initiated that support policing, judicial and corrections systems for fair and equitable treatment of citizens by the host nation government. This is often easier said than accomplished. Many nations simply do not have the underpinnings of the rule of law to understand and implement the system and will require coaching, mentoring, training, and support along a continuum toward peaceful existence. Additionally, if efforts in combat operations do not include shaping the area for stability, criminals, insurgents, and organized crime will control the population and developing government, making the rule-of-law plan efforts exponentially more difficult. Citizens must have the right to ownership, fair treatment by policing and judicial systems, and corrections systems that enforce compliance with the law in a manner that is equitable and uniformly fair to everyone. Military police forces are well suited for providing host nation assistance and training for principally two of the three legs of the rule of law—the policing and corrections aspects. Military police units must cultivate relationships with host nation police and local officials in the operational area, if they exist, early in the operation to maximize efficiencies later during the transition period. This process will provide valuable police intelligence that will aid the unit in planning and recommending courses of action to assist in establishing the rule of law.

4-52. Military police support to transition to the rule of law can include helping establish and train local police officers in basic to advanced law enforcement skills and operating police stations. Military police units can assist with developing requests for law enforcement equipment and sustainment items necessary for local law enforcement. Our military police units can provide joint patrolling and the operation of the police station, mentoring host nation personnel until the host nation is capable of independent operations. Military police detention units can assist with establishing corrections operations in a reopened or temporary facility. They can also train the guard forces and prison operations staffs to properly operate a facility. All of these activities build confidence in the local population that law-abiding citizens will be treated fairly and equitably and that laws will be applied equally and uniformly to every citizen. Citizens must know they will not be unlawfully detained or imprisoned. They must also be confident that the unlawful activity of others will be policed and punished.

4-53. Military police capabilities that are relevant to the rule-of-law mission to support the training of host nation police and security personnel in police and corrections tasks include—

- Arrest and interrogation techniques.
- Prison and jail security and procedures.
- Tactical doctrine.
- Crowd control.
- Organized crime combating.
- Forensics and evidence collection.
- Protection of sensitive facilities.
- Election security.
- High-risk personnel security.

BORDER OPERATIONS

4-54. Military police Soldiers are periodically tasked to support border operations along the U.S. borders. The support provided includes technical equipment (such as thermal imagery, night vision, and infrared detection) and the operation of the equipment to help with the detection of personnel illegally entering into the United States. The Posse Comitatus Act prohibits Regular Army or Army Reserve Soldiers from enforcing civil law; they may only respond to defend themselves or law enforcement officials from imminent danger. Nonfederalized National Guard military police performing missions under the control of their respective state governors are not prohibited by the Posse Comitatus Act. On mobilization (federalization), National Guard Soldiers are restricted under the Posse Comitatus Act.

4-55. Borders outside of our own national borders may also require support from military police units. Military police may be required to operate control posts, conduct border patrols, and supervise crossing points at international borders. Many countries control the movement of military personnel and civilians at their borders. Border control is maintained for reasons of security; customs, and tariff enforcement; protection of the civilian economy; and apprehension of criminals, absentees, and persons of intelligence interest. Control is maintained through the establishment of authorized road or rail crossing points, border patrols, control posts, and liaison with authorities of neighboring countries (if feasible). Prohibited or restricted zones are often used to help control circulation at the borders.

4-56. In conducting border control, military police normally coordinate with indigenous police, counterintelligence units, and civil affairs units. They watch for individuals or items that may be involved in criminal and customs offenses. They also establish the identity and purpose of U.S. forces crossing borders and examine vehicles and travel documents. Support to border control may be paramount to prevent adversaries from moving weapons, supplies, and personnel across borders to attack or disrupt friendly forces.

4-57. Military police may also be tasked to enforce customs laws and regulations in support of local government or host nation officials. The U.S. military enforcement of customs laws of countries in which U.S. forces are stationed is often part of agreements like the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) status-of-forces agreement between the United States and the respective host nation.

CIVIL SECURITY AND CIVIL CONTROL

4-58. Civil security and civil control deny adversaries or insurgents access to the general population and resources and prevent incidental civilian activity from interfering with military operations. Military police units support local commanders and often assist civil affairs personnel in planning and conducting population and resource control programs employed during all military operations. These programs may consist of training host nation police and corrections agencies and staffs, conducting police operations, enforcing curfews and movement restrictions, resettling dislocated civilians, conducting licensing operations, controlling rations, enforcing regulations, implementing amnesty programs, inspecting facilities, and guarding humanitarian assistance distributions. Military police units also assist, direct, or deny dislocated civilians the use of main supply routes as they move to resettlement camps where they are cared for and while nongovernmental organizations work to coordinate their relocation.

4-59. Military police forces are internationally recognized as law enforcement personnel and not combat troops. Military police capabilities, coupled with their acceptability and their ability to interface with the population, make military police units well suited for civil security or civil control in a primary or economy-of-force role.

TERRORISM

4-60. Combating terrorism is actions, including antiterrorism (defensive measures taken to reduce vulnerability to terrorist acts) and counterterrorism (offensive measures taken to prevent, deter, and respond to terrorism), taken to oppose terrorism throughout the entire threat spectrum. (JP 3-07.2) Within the context of combating terrorism, military police actions generally fall within the included subcategory of antiterrorism. Military police and USACIDC elements coordinate with installation law enforcement, counterintelligence special agents, and local and federal law enforcement agencies to combat terrorism at local levels. The protection working group and the antiterrorism working group are two of the primary places where coordination and the sharing of information takes place. Military police and USACIDC Soldiers share the police intelligence report and gain valuable information from other intelligence efforts of military and civilian agencies tied together at the local level. Each of these organizations ties that information back to regional and federal levels. The OPMG provides the military police policy on combating terrorism and coordinates the Army program at the departmental level. USAMPS provides functional courses to train Soldiers in antiterrorism.

CONTRACTORS

4-61. There is a proliferation of contractors on the modern battlefield. Some of these contractors are providing security and protection functions; others are providing technical or sustainment functions. Military police units must be aware of their presence and coordinate as required to integrate any actions that may conflict. Military police units may be inundated with requests from contractors for protection, convoy security as they move around the battlefield, or specific assistance to their missions. Military police units will not be able to divert from their tactical mission to support these types of requests without proper command approval. Normally, the contract statement of work will specify that the supported command is responsible for providing protection and security to contractor personnel. When that information is missing from the contract, the J-3/G-3 of the command area in which the contractor is required to operate must designate units responsible for contractor protection and security. Contractors will have to integrate into the units they are supporting for their support.

4-62. In some circumstances, civilian contractors accompanying the force may be subject to the UCMJ and administrative action by the United States or contractor employers. There are several ways that jurisdiction may be exercised over contractors. Determining whether criminal jurisdiction exists over contractors may depend on the "type" of contractor and any applicable written provisions within the contract itself. Furthermore, civilians may be subject to the Military Extraterritorial Jurisdiction Act of 2000. This act establishes federal jurisdiction over offenses committed OCONUS by persons employed by or accompanying armed forces or by members of the armed forces who are released or separated from active duty before being identified and prosecuted for committing such offenses. Government contractors may be held liable for their employee's misconduct. Contract employees may also be held personally liable. In all cases involving suspected contractor misconduct, commanders should immediately consult

their staff judge advocate for specific legal advice. (See FM 1-04 for additional information regarding contractors in support military operations.)

NONCOMBATANT EVACUATIONS

4-63. Military police units can provide support to noncombatant evacuations. Military police units are capable of providing security at departure locations and extraction sites and for convoys carrying evacuees. Military police are skilled in interpersonal communications and the graduated use of force from their law enforcement experiences. This skill set transfers well to working in direct contact with the evacuees.

COUNTERINSURGENCY

4-64. *Counterinsurgency* is those military, paramilitary, political, economic, psychological, and civic actions taken by a government to defeat insurgency. (JP 1-02) In counterinsurgency, host nation forces and their partners operate to defeat armed resistance, reduce passive opposition, and establish or reestablish the legitimacy of the host nation government. (Refer to FM 3-24 for additional information on counterinsurgency.) Counterinsurgency is a joint operation within the operational theme of irregular warfare where stability tasks are generally dominant. Military police units and Soldiers play a key role in counterinsurgency.

4-65. A successful counterinsurgency by nature requires a weighted stability effort (see figure 4-3). Many considerations applicable to counterinsurgency are equally applicable to stability tasks in general. This is especially true following major combat operations or severe disasters, whether natural or man-made, in which the infrastructure and the host nation government have been decimated or rendered ineffective and civil security and control are at risk.
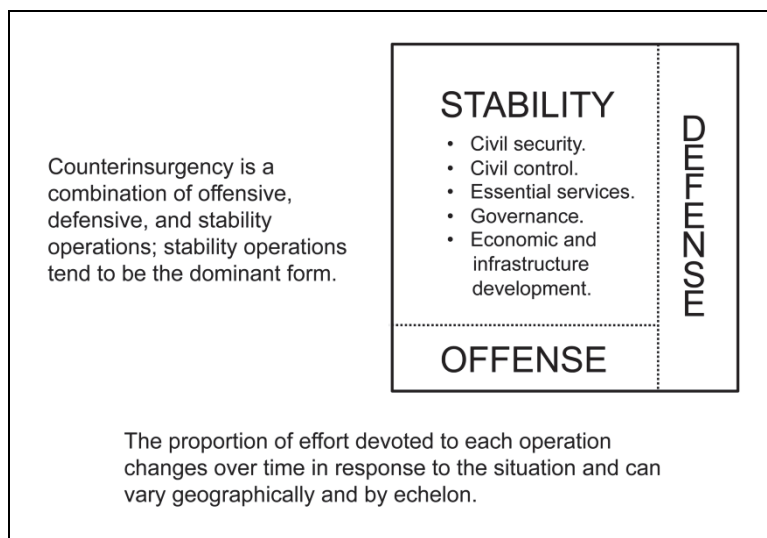
Figure 4-3. Aspects of counterinsurgency

Police Operations Considerations

4-66. Demanding and complex counterinsurgency draws heavily on a broad range of capabilities and typically requires a different mix and application of offensive, defensive, and stability tasks from what is expected in major combat operations. The balance between these tasks and the nature of their application depends on the local situation. A successful counterinsurgency effort, especially during stability, establishes host nation institutions that can sustain government legitimacy. Security under the rule of law is essential to success in any stability operation. Without a secure environment, permanent reforms cannot be implemented and disorder spreads. To establish legitimacy, commanders transition security activities from combat operations to law enforcement as quickly as possible.

4-67. As the transition of security activities occur, commanders must remember that there is a clear separation of police authority and roles from those of the military. The primacy of civil police organizations is not to augment the offensive capability of the military, but to assist in the establishment of the rule of law. The establishment of a legitimate and effective police force is critical to counterinsurgency. When insurgents are seen as criminals, they lose public support. Using a legal system established in line with local culture and practices to deal with such criminals enhances the legitimacy of the host nation government. The establishment of courts, police, and corrections institutions operating within the rule of law is paramount; nowhere is this more evident than in the counterinsurgency fight.

4-68. Military police can be an effective force for countering small insurgent and criminal groups supported by the local community due to their frequent contact with the population. Developing effective host nation security forces—including military police, community police, and paramilitary forces—is one of the highest priority stability tasks for military police. This mission is supported by Army and joint military police elements as they provide training and the development of requisite skills for host nation police. When supporting host nation police, the military police presence not only provides security to communities but also aids in building support for the host nation government. Military police experience in identifying and countering organized criminal networks is especially relevant to stability and counterinsurgency efforts. The operational environment in any stability operation may be filled with hardened criminals and opportunists conducting criminal activity that jeopardizes civil security and the strategic and operational plan. The methods, structure, and local relationships of many insurgent groups has more in common with organized criminals than with conventional military threat forces.

4-69. The nature of the threat can often inhibit the ability of friendly forces to differentiate between a hostile act and a hostile intent or between insurgents and innocents within the civilian community. Military police clarify and verify facts, assumptions, and events in the operational environment through frequent and continuous engagement with the local population. For this reason, military commanders and forces must have the authority to detain civilians and an acceptable framework to confine and eventually release them back into the operational environment. This authority has the most legitimacy when sanctioned by international mandate or when it is bestowed or conveyed from the local or regional governmental power. The initial or baseline authority granted to military forces to use force and detain civilians will ultimately determine the status of the persons they detain. The status of detained persons will further determine the manner in which they are processed, the degree of due process they are afforded, and whether their offense is military or criminal in nature. Detainee status and identification will also help develop and determine eventual rehabilitative, reconciliatory, and release strategies.

Detention Operations Considerations

4-70. The need for information is so crucial in counterinsurgency operations that it typically leads to increased numbers of detained and interned persons. The time-sensitive nature of information and intelligence in counterinsurgency operations often leads to detentions based on incomplete or inaccurate information that makes determining detainee status and identification difficult and complex. The process of detainee identification and assessment is continuous and begins at the point of capture; is actively monitored during the period of detainee detention; and significantly impacts custody, control, and release decisions and strategies.

4-71. Detainee operations play a significant role in stability and counterinsurgency efforts because large detainee populations can become fertile ground for insurgent, extremist, and criminal recruitment if individuals are not processed quickly, ethically, humanely, and effectively. The development and growth of insurgent and/or criminal networks, if not identified and mitigated, can pose significant threats to the detention cadre and the detainee population.

4-72. In stability, especially protracted counterinsurgency environments, detainee populations will likely grow steadily as the operation endures. Offensive surge operations can increase detainee growth very rapidly. This is especially characteristic of counterinsurgency-focused operations. Insurgents may also attempt to infiltrate detention facilities to intimidate or assassinate political opponents or their supporters. Captured insurgents display a propensity to continue recruitment, assassination, and intimidation inside theater detention facilities, making it incumbent upon forces supporting detainee operations to focus their

efforts on countering insurgency within the facility while synchronizing their efforts with military operations outside the detention facility.

4-73. The theater of operations must have an effective plan to detain, assess, reconcile, transition, and eventually release detained or interned persons in a manner that is integrated with, and responsive to, the overall strategic and operational effort. Theater detention facility commanders often support larger coordinated approaches to deliberately shaping the information environment and reconciliatory efforts involving detainees. The capture, detention, rehabilitation/reconciliation, and repatriation of members of armed groups must be conducted in a manner that is not only consistent with the strategic end state, operational goals, and tactical realities, but is also fully compliant with the rule of law to ensure legitimacy with the population.

4-74. During conflict with a conventional force, the segregation of officers, enlisted personnel, civilians, and females is required when conducting detainee operations and is relatively clear in application. In contrast, due to the unconventional nature of the threat, many operations may require segregation by categories according to requirements for conventional military as well as segregation (or typology) by ethnic, tribal, or religious affiliation; human behavior traits and characteristics; and age groups. The facts and circumstances resulting in an apprehension may also determine detainee custody and control status. The goal is to isolate insurgents, extremists, and hardened criminals from moderate and circumstantial detainees. Inaccurate assessments can have immediate and significant effects within the theater detention facility that can result in injury or death to detainees, contribute to insurgent recruitment, or cause custody and control problems for the guard force.

4-75. While the theater detention facility commander develops procedures within the theater detention facility designed to identify and defeat insurgent or criminal efforts to organize escape, harm the guard force and other detainees, or degrade the effectiveness of the theater detention facility operation in general, an external operational headquarters typically provides the linkage to the overarching strategic and operational effort in the theater. This could be accomplished by a multifunctional headquarters, such as the military police command or a joint detainee task force involving military police, in concert with MI, linguists, medical and legal personnel, civil affairs, psychological operations, host nation forces, interagency partners, and local leaders in a coordinated and synchronized approach. Procedures could also include tactics, techniques, and procedures to defeat the insurgent networks and efforts within the theater detention facility that may include—

- Developing deliberate procedures for detainee identification, categorization, and continual assessment.
- Using multifunctional boards to assess detainees and develop reconciliation plans.
- Designating dedicated teams for each major compound that is composed of bicultural advisors, intelligence, and counterintelligence representatives.
- Allowing detainee participation in their adjudication and rehabilitation future.
- Empowering detainee leaders to leverage their support through incentives.
- Ensuring that the informational needs of detainees are met and that rules and disciplinary actions are understood.

4-76. Detainee operations in support of stability tasks may become enduring and assume many of the characteristics of large-scale, maximum-security prison operations typically found in the international civilian sector. Long-term custody and control requirements are often augmented with structured rehabilitative and reconciliation programs, increased access to medical treatment, and visitation opportunities concluding with some form of guarantor or sponsor-based release or parole system. These operations are resource-intensive and must receive a priority commensurate with their strategic significance. As stability tasks progress, military police or corrections personnel must be prepared to provide training for host nation detainee and corrections tasks with a goal of transitioning these activities to full host nation control. Host nation personnel should be trained to handle and interrogate detainees and prisoners according to internationally recognized human rights modalities. Prisoner and detainee management procedures should provide for the security and fair and efficient processing of those detained.

4-77. Generally, the military does not lead the planning and execution of detainee release programs; however, the military may be task with establishing and operating theater detention facility reconciliation

centers to ensure the continuity of detainee programs established in detention centers and with reintegration efforts that conclude at the points of release back into society. The individual or large-scale release or reintegration of detainees back into the civilian community is a significant event in stability tasks. Reintegration efforts must be widely understood and visible. This is generally achieved by a deliberate information and public affairs effort. Former combatants may participate in the process when offered some level of due process involvement linked to corrective behavior modification. Commanders must seek legal assistance and ethical guidance as they balance regulatory operations security and detainee privacy entitlements with the transparency necessary for supporting national values. Military police may provide the security, custody, and control of detainees at theater detention facility reconciliation centers and may actively conduct rehabilitative and reconciliatory programs in a command or support relationship with the headquarters responsible for an area of operations containing a theater detention facility reconciliation center.

4-78. The military police role during detainee operations in stability environments is central to transitioning the strategic risk of interning large numbers of civilian detainees to a strategic advantage that is gained from the reintegration of informed and productive citizens at peace with their community and government. This is not possible if detainees have not been treated humanely and with respect and dignity.

SITE EXPLOITATION

4-79. Site exploitation is systematically searching for and collecting information, material, and persons from a designated location and analyzing them to answer information requirements, facilitate subsequent operations, or support criminal prosecution. (ATTP 3-90.15) Some sites hold significant strategic value. These sensitive sites will, therefore, receive added scrutiny. ATTP 3-90.15 provides an in-depth discussion of site exploitation and sensitive sites. Examples of sensitive sites requiring military police technical capability may include—

- CBRN facilities related to weapons of mass destruction.
- War crime sites (mass grave sites, illegal detainment facilities, clandestine mission command facilities).
- Terrorist training camps.
- Prisoner of war locations.
- Research and production facilities involving breakthrough technologies.
- Government buildings and infrastructure.
- Official government residences.

4-80. Requirements for military police support are generally based on the type of site, the duration of the exploitation mission, and the anticipated conditions in the area of operations. Military police support may be required once the site has been seized; mission planners should coordinate and allocate support from military police and CID agents as required. Military police have many potential roles in operations involving site exploitation. Military police and/or CID agents may be required to—

- Isolate and secure the exploited site by establishing a restricted perimeter, providing access control, and preventing evidence destruction.
- Conduct exploited-site searches, evidence collection, and management activities, to include establishing the proper chain of custody for material collected at the site. Establishing a proper chain of custody for evidentiary purposes will be required if the material is expected to be used in legal proceedings.
- Conduct the initial assessment and characterization of suspected mass graves, torture chambers, and war crime sites.
- Assist with handling and processing detainees, cataloging biometric data for individual detainees, and segregating and controlling personnel detained at the site to enable evaluation for further detention, interview, or interrogation. In cases where criminal prosecution is expected, military police or CID agents may be required to interview suspects or collect witness statements.
- Process detainees, captured documents, and equipment.

- Conduct police intelligence operations through the collection of police information, police engagement, and biometrics. Provide applicable police information and intelligence regarding facilities, security, emergency response personnel and organizations, and key personnel in the area.
- Conduct crowd control and civil disturbance operations.
- Provide MWD support for security, explosives or narcotic detection.

SPECIAL OPERATIONS FORCES

4-81. Commanders employ special operations forces to help attain strategic and operational objectives. Special operations forces are well suited to operate in a joint, multinational, or interagency environment and can operate independently for extended periods of time in isolated areas. Special operations forces may advise, train, or assist indigenous personnel in conventional reconnaissance, surveillance, and small-unit tactics to accomplish tactical objectives. Military police can serve as a force enabler to special operations forces across the range of military operations. This support is not limited to any one point on the range of military operations. (See ADP 3-05 and ADRP 3-05.)

4-82. Military police possess unique technical capabilities that support the special operations forces core operations (unconventional warfare, foreign internal defense, counterinsurgency, counterterrorism, weapons of mass destruction, combat stability operations, and support to major operations). Military police support to special operations is conducted at the company, platoon, squad, and Soldier level. Military police technical support includes—

- Forensics analysis and/or biometrics identification capabilities.
- Host nation police training and support.
- Detainee operations.
- Physical security procedures.
- MWD.
- Logistics security.
- Antiterrorism measures.
- Resettlement operations.
- Protective services.
- Host nation corrections training and support.
- Police/criminal information analysis.

Chapter 5

Planning, Preparation, Execution, and Assessment

Military police planners and staff members that are in combined arms or non-military police headquarters must integrate themselves into planning and operational process activities. Military police must understand joint planning processes when supporting joint operations. Military police use other problem-solving activities that address specific military police functional requirements. The operations process is the context within which military police capabilities are integrated into the combined arms application. This chapter describes planning responsibilities, integration, and processes for military police units and for military police planners in non-military police units and continues in that context by discussing preparation, execution, and continuous assessment of military police operations.

PLANNING

5-1.   Planning is part of mission command. Planning is the means by which the commander envisions a desired future; lays out effective ways of achieving it; and communicates the vision, intent, and decisions between commanders, their staffs, subordinate commanders, and unified action partners. Planning is continuous and a cyclic activity of the operations process. The product of planning is a plan or an order that directs future action.

5-2.   All planning is based on imperfect knowledge and assumption about the future. Planning and plans assist military police commanders and staffs—

- Understand and develop the situation.
- Anticipate events and adapt to changing circumstances.
- Task-organize the force and prioritize efforts.

5-3.   Planning provides an informed forecast of how future events may unfold and how military police forces may be employed to support future operations. This entails identifying and evaluating potential decisions and actions in advance to include thinking through consequences of certain actions. Planning involves thinking about ways to influence the future as well as how to respond to potential events. Put simply, planning is thinking critically and creatively about what to do and how to do it, while anticipating changes along the way.

5-4.   A key aspect of planning is organizing military police forces for operations. *Task-organizing* is the act of configuring the operational Army, support staff, or sustainment package of specific size and composition to meet a unique task or mission (ADRP 3-0). Through task organization, commanders establish command and support relationships and allocate resources to weight the decisive operation or main effort. Command and support relationships provide the basis for a unity of command and unity of effort in operations. (See ADRP 5-0 for discussion on Army command and support relationships.)

5-5.   Commanders integrate input from subordinate commanders into their planning processes. Military police leaders must understand and be integral participants in the planning processes impacting military police operations at their echelon of employment. Supporting military police unit commanders and leaders conduct parallel planning processes that provide effective outcomes for the military police units employed and appropriate input to the higher commander's process. The provost marshal and other military police staff planners coordinate military police planning activities with their counterparts at higher, adjacent, and subordinate headquarters.

5-6.   Military police operations are complex; and resource-intensive with regard to time, manpower, equipment, and sustainment resources; and require extensive and proactive coordination. Successful

military police planning requires an understanding of all military police capabilities and requirements (tactical and technical) and their impacts on the concept of operations. Military police operations must be identified and synchronized during the planning activities of the operations process, requiring the critical reasoning skills and problem-solving techniques inherent in established Army planning (see ADRP 5-0). Military police operations will require the use of military police-specific technical skill sets to plan, manage, and execute the military police-specific disciplines on the battlefield.

5-7.   Military police planners provide for the integration of military police-focused considerations on the supported commander's staff at each echelon. Throughout the planning process, the military police staff must advise supported commanders and their staffs about military police capabilities, methods of employment, and additional capabilities and depth of the military police force pool. In those units without organic military police staff support, including support type organizations, it may be important for the supporting military police organization to provide planning support. Liaison may be needed in certain situations to ensure proper and complete staff planning.

5-8.   Relevant information includes information that is important to the commander in his duty of commanding the mission. In the context of information management, the mission variables make up the major subject categories into which relevant information is grouped for military operations. (See chapter 1 for a complete discussion of the mission variables.) The commander and staff consider relevant information for each variable in all military operations. The relative impact of each variable may vary, but the commanders and staffs must consider them all.

5-9.   The analysis of the operational environment in terms of the operational variables begins as early as possible in the planning process. Analysis in terms of mission variables begins during mission analysis. Staff sections analyze the situation and its effects on their areas of expertise in terms of the mission variables to maintain their running estimates. A *running estimate* is the continuous assessment of the current situation used to determine if the current operation is proceeding according to the commander's intent and if planned future operations are supportable (ADP 5-0). Running estimates provide the relevant information that commanders need to understand the situation. Military police planners and staffs at all levels must continually assess and identify information gaps and develop information requirements that support further planning, assessment, and decision points. The development of a collection plan satisfies these information requirements and drives police intelligence operations.

5-10. Communications support military police operations by contributing to the collection, processing, and dissemination of an uninterrupted flow of police information via wired and wireless networks. Support to military police operations consists of the network management functions that build and manage communication networks. All communications support requirements must be coordinated through the signal staff officer during the integrated planning phase.

OPERATIONAL CONSIDERATIONS

5-11. When planning for military police operations, there are operational considerations that apply. While the process is the same at all echelons, there are differences that apply to each level of war. Specific planning for the military police disciplines and their associated tasks will vary by echelon and across the Service components in which that planning occurs. Although many of the tasks performed by military police are relevant for each of the operational components, each of those components will tend to drive the type of task that is typically performed in support of them. Parallel planning will be critical, and the degree of unified action partner participation will also affect planning. The condition of the host nation and its receptivity to our presence may dynamically affect planning.

STAFF PLANNING AT EACH LEVEL OF WAR

5-12. It is important to understand planning within the context of the levels of war (see figure 5-1). Operational-level planning involves broader dimensions of time and space than tactical-level planning. It is often more complex and less defined. Operational-level planners are often required to define an area of operations, estimate forces required, and evaluate the requirements for the operation. In contrast, tactical-level planners proceed from an existing operational design. Normally, areas of operations are prescribed, objectives and available forces are identified, and sequences of activities are specified for

tactical-level commanders. Neither operational- nor tactical-level planning is limited to particular echelons. As echelons of responsibilities have blurred, essentially any military police unit is capable of supporting a maneuver unit at any level of war. For example, a military police battalion may deploy to support a joint task force or an Army corps at the operational level or a corps, division, MEB, or BCT at the tactical level. Military police planning is conducted at the strategic, operational, and tactical levels and includes all of the military police disciplines.

STRATEGIC
Military police strategic planners must determine the mobilization, deployment, employment, and sustainment requirements of the military police force in relation to joint planning and the combatant commander's concept of operations.

Parallel planning effort

OPERATIONAL
Military police operational planners take the joint operations plan and develop the supporting operational plan, assigning specific Military Police missions to available military police forces at the operational and tactical level.

TACTICAL
Military police tactical planners take operational plans and develop tactical operation orders to employ the best methods to accomplish assigned missions or tasks. These missions or tasks are specifically assigned to military police units or headquarters containing military police units (the maneuver enhancement brigade might be one example) at the tactical level.

Figure 5-1. Military police planning at each level of war

5-13. Understanding the theater structure commonly used to array military capabilities enables an understanding of military police capabilities within the context of the operational environment. A theater is a geographic area for which a geographic combatant commander is assigned military responsibility. The command views a theater from a strategic perspective and assesses the level of international military cooperation available with the degree of dedicated U.S. military resources necessary. These factors influence prospective Army operations in each theater or geographic combatant commander area of responsibility.

5-14. The geographic combatant commander or senior Army commander's planning concepts, when conducted concurrently with a major combat effort and synchronized to the overall concept of operations, focus military police planners on the relationship of protection, support to movement and maneuver, detention, and support to stability tasks. Military police planners must determine the basic, yet broad, mobilization, deployment, employment, and sustainment requirements of the combatant commander's concept of operations. At all levels of planning, the senior military police commander or staff planner at each echelon must support the development of the supported commander's operation plan or operation order and an internal operation plan or operation order for the military police organization.

ARMY PLANNING METHODOLOGIES

5-15. Successful planning requires the integration of conceptual and detailed thinking. Army leaders employ three methodologies for planning, and determining the appropriate mix based on the scope of the problem, their familiarity with it, the time available, and the availability of a staff. Methodologies that assist commanders and staffs with planning include—

- Army design methodology.
- Troop leading procedures.
- The military decisionmaking process.

5-16. *Army design methodology* is a methodology for applying critical and creative thinking to understand, visualize, and describe problems and approaches to solving them. (ADP 5-0) Army design methodology is particularly useful as an aid for commanders conducting conceptual planning, but must be integrated with the detailed planning typically associated with the military decisionmaking process to produce executable plans. (See ADRP 5-0 for additional information on Army design methodology.)

5-17. Army design methodology entails framing an operational environment, framing a problem, and developing an operational approach to solve the problem. Army design methodology results in an improved understanding of the operational environment, a problem statement, the initial commander's intent, and an operational approach that serves as the link between conceptual and detailed planning. Based on their understanding and learning gained during Army design methodology, commanders issue planning guidance, to include an operational approach, to guide more detailed planning using the military decisionmaking process.

5-18. *Troop-leading procedures* are a dynamic process used by small-unit leaders to analyze a mission, develop a plan, and prepare for an operation (ADP 5-0). Troop leading procedures extend the military decisionmaking process to the small-unit level. The military decisionmaking process and troop-leading procedures are similar, but not identical. Commanders with a coordinating staff use the military decisionmaking process as their primary planning process. Military police company level and smaller units lack formal staffs and use troop-leading procedures to plan and prepare for operations. This places the responsibility for planning primarily on the commander or small-unit leader. Troop leading procedures enable military police leaders to maximize available planning time while developing effective plans and preparing their units to conduct military police operations.

MILITARY DECISIONMAKING PROCESS

5-19. The *military decisionmaking process* is an iterative planning methodology to understand the situation and mission, develop a course of action, and produce an operation plan or order. (ADP 5-0) Not all decisions require the same level of planning. Commanders and staff make hundreds of decisions during operations in an environment of great uncertainty, unpredictability, and constant change. The commander makes some decisions very quickly. Other decisions are deliberate, using the military decisionmaking process and a complete staff to create a fully developed and written order. The military decisionmaking process is defined in detail in ADRP 5-0. JP 5-0 provides the planning construct in a joint environment in much the same manner.

5-20. Military police planning will include considerations unique to military police operations, the particular situation, and the specific mission. Some considerations are more generic and can be summarized for broad reference in any application of the military decisionmaking process. Focused primarily at operational-level planning, table 5-1 lists some of the generic military police planning considerations as they pertain to the operations process and each step of the military decisionmaking process,.

Table 5-1. Military police considerations in the military decisionmaking planning, preparation, execution, and assessment processes

Operations Process	MDMP Steps	Military Police Considerations
Plan	Step 1. Mission receipt	Receive higher headquarters plans, orders, and planning directives.
		Understand commander's intent and time constraints.
		Request map, satellite photographs, and intelligence information about the AO.
		Request detainee capture estimates.
		Request estimates of DCs in the AO.
		Participate in planning boards and working groups that impact military police operations or where military police operations may impact Army operations.

Table 5-1. Military police considerations in the military decisionmaking planning, preparation, execution, and assessment process (continued)

Operations Process	Steps of the MDMP	Military Police Considerations
Plan (continued)	Step 2. Mission analysis	Analyze available military and police intelligence products.
		Evaluate terrain, climate, and threat capabilities to determine the potential impact on movement, protection, and survivability.
		Develop essential military police unit and task requirements to support the higher headquarters intent.
		Identify available information on routes and key facilities.
		Evaluate LOC, APOD, and SPOD protection requirements.
		Determine the availability of military police headquarters, units, and detention and resettlement facilities.
		Review the availability of military police capabilities to Army, joint, multinational, HN, and contract.
		Determine military police unit requirements to the supported force.
		Determine detention or resettlement support requirements based on capture projections.
		Determine military police specialized technical requirements, such as customs operations, forensics support, or investigative needs.
		Review base camp master planning documentation to determine the adequacy of necessary facilities and security-related construction.
		Review existing MSR and critical site information. Conduct site reconnaissance (if possible), and determine the potential threat and mitigations.
		Determine the level of interagency cooperation required among security forces.
		Determine funding sources as required.
		Determine supply (Class I through X) requirements, and establish support links.
		Determine threat capabilities to interdict MSR and high-risk facilities.
		Develop detention and resettlement, and recommend CCIR.
		Integrate military police reconnaissance efforts.
		Integrate police information and police intelligence products.
	Step 3. COA development	Identify priority military police requirements, including essential tasks developed during mission analysis.
		Integrate military police support into COA development.
		Recommend an appropriate level of protection for each COA based on the expected threat.
		Recommend detention or resettlement facility and temporary holding locations, construction or improvement of facilities and security-related structures, and sustainment support requirements.
		Recommend the prioritization of military police disciplines that are linked to each operation phase.

Table 5-1. Military police considerations in the military decisionmaking planning, preparation, execution, and assessment process (continued)

Operations Process	MDMP Steps	Military Police Considerations
Plan	Step 4. COA analysis (war game)	War-game and refine each COA of the military police plan.
		Develop pros and cons for each COA.
	Step 5. COA comparison	Determine the most feasible, acceptable, and suitable methods of completing the military police effort.
		Determine and compare the risks of each military police COA.
	Step 6. COA approval	Refine the commander's intent, CCIR and EEFI.
		Gain approval of the essential military police tasks and priorities as required.
	Step 7. Orders production, dissemination, and transition	Produce/approve military police OPLAN/OPORD; or integrate critical military police-related information, missions, and coordination within the OPORD and produce annexes/appendices as required.
		Review and provide input to the appropriate plans and orders.
		Ensure that resources are properly allocated.
		Ensure that subordinates understand the OPLAN/OPORD
Prepare		Coordinate mission rehearsal exercises as appropriate.
		Conduct OPLAN/OPORD prebriefings.
		Conduct TLP and precombat checks as required.
		Continue the integration and synchronization of the military police plan with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units.
		Conduct plans to operations transition.
		Establish liaison where required.
Execute		Execute military police task as prioritized for each phase to support movement and protection as required.
		Conduct TLP and precombat checks as required.
		Participate in military police-related boards and working groups.
		Coordinate detention operations according to international law and treaties.
		Monitor operations, change indicators, and decision points; make required decisions.
		Maintain situational understanding.

Table 5-1. Military police considerations in the military decisionmaking planning, preparation, execution, and assessment process (continued)

Operations Process	MDMP Steps	Military Police Considerations
Assess		Determine if forces (to include resources) are ready and if appropriate capabilities exist.
		Develop viable MOE and MOP.
		Monitor and evaluate operations, from planning through execution.
		Continuously assess military police operations against MOE to ensure the desired effect is achieved.
		Continuously assess military police operations against MOP to ensure that proper execution.
		Revise MOE and MOP as needed.
		Apply corrective planning and execution measures as needed.

Legend:
AO   area of operations
APOD   aerial port of debarkation
CCIR   commander's critical information requirements
COA   course of action
DC   dislocated civilian
EEFI   essential elements of friendly information
HN   host nation
LOC   lines of communication
MDMP   military decisionmaking process
MOE   measure of effectiveness
MOP   measure of performance
MSR   main supply route
OPLAN operation plan
OPORD operation order
SPOD   seaport of debarkation
TLP   troop-leading procedures

5-21. The battlefield workload analysis worksheet, which can be downloaded at <https://www.us.army.mil/suite/doc/30602702 >is a tool used to help determine the number of military police units required to perform multiple missions in an area of operations. A detailed workload analysis attempts to eliminate over-tasked and stressed military police personnel and ensure that adequate military police resources are applied to a mission. The battlefield workload analysis interconnected formulas determine the required military police structure. There are individual tabs for military police baseline, MWD, detention operations, resettlement, police operations, security and mobility support, and CID requirements. The battlefield workload analysis directly supports the military police staff running estimate and requires continuous maintenance throughout the planning, preparation, and execution of a mission to remain relevant as a staff planning tool. To provide comments or ask questions regarding the battlefield workload analysis, contact the Military Police Doctrine office at <usarmy.leonardwood.mscoe.mbx.cdidcodddmpdoc@mail.mil>.

RUNNING ESTIMATE

5-22. A running estimate is the continuous assessment of the current situation used to determine if the current operation is proceeding according to the commander's intent and if planned future operations are supportable. (ADP 5-0) Commanders and each staff section maintain their running estimates continuously throughout planning, preparation, and execution. During the development or maintenance of the running estimate, military police leaders use the battlefield workload analysis worksheet as a tool to help determine the number of military police units required to perform multiple missions in an area of operations. A

detailed workload analysis attempts to eliminate over tasked and stressed military police personnel and ensure adequate military police resources are applied to a mission.

5-23. Military police commanders, provost marshals, and staff planners use the running estimate as a tool to facilitate accurate and current situational understanding and predictive analysis. The running estimate—an extension of the military decisionmaking process—is conducted concurrently with the planning process of the supported force commander and is continually refined. This estimate allows for the early integration and synchronization of military police considerations into combined arms planning processes. In their running estimates, staff sections continuously consider the effect of new information and update the following: facts, assumptions, friendly force status, effects of enemy activity, civil considerations, and conclusions and recommendations. Military police closely examine civil considerations that can affect military operations and social order. The factors of POLICE (see ATTP 3-39.20) provide a framework for assessing the police and criminal environment and serve as a tool for organizing information and developing information requirements, some of which may become commander's critical information requirements. This assessment helps shape military police planning and the execution of military police operations. A military police staff running estimate assesses the following as it relates to military police support and planning:

- Friendly-force capabilities (ongoing and planned operations).
- Enemy capabilities (area of operations of the unit for current operations and future plans).
- Civil considerations (area of expertise of the section for current operations and future plans, especially crime and criminal networks; police and prison capability and capacity; and enforcement gaps and mechanisms with respect to police infrastructure and systems).
- Operational environment effects on current and future operations from the military police perspective.

5-24. The development and continuous maintenance of the running estimate drives the coordination required between military police units, provost marshals, military police staff planners, supported commanders, and other staff officers (to include joint staff) in the development of plans, orders, and supporting annexes. Additionally, the allocation of military police assets and resources assists in determining command and support relationships that will be used. Table 5-2 shows the relationship between the military decisionmaking process and the military police staff running estimate. Within a functional military police brigade or battalion, the staff is responsible for all aspects of the process; within a multifunctional headquarters, the military police staff within the provost marshal section must ensure that military police considerations are integrated within the process and are published in the resulting order.

Table 5-2. Military decisionmaking process and military police running estimate

MDMP	*Military Police Running Estimate*

Mission analysis:
• Analyze higher headquarters order.
• Conduct IPB.
• Determine specified, implied, and essential tasks.
• Review available assets.
• Determine constraints.
• Identify critical facts and assumptions.
• Conduct a risk assessment.
	Mission analysis:
	• Analyze the higher headquarters orders, to include—
	  ▪ Commander's intent.
	  ▪ Mission.
	  ▪ Concept of operation.
	  ▪ Timeline.
	  ▪ Area of operations.

**Table 5-2. Military decisionmaking process and the military police running estimate
(continued)**

MDMP	Military Police Running Estimate

• Determine CCIR.
• Develop an intelligence and surveillance plan.
• Plan the use of available time.
• Write the restated mission.
• Conduct a mission analysis briefing.
• Approve the restated mission.
• Develop the commander's intent.
• Issue commander's guidance.
• Issue a warning order.
• Review facts and assumptions.
	• Conduct IPB and develop military police staff running estimate, to include—
	  ▪ Terrain and weather analysis
	  ▪ Enemy mission and capabilities
	  ▪ Friendly mission and capabilities
	Note. Focus on factors of POLICE to frame the IPB of the area of operations relevant to military police operations.
	• Analyze the military police mission, to include—
	  ▪ Specified military police tasks.
	  ▪ Implied military police tasks.
	  ▪ Assets available.
	  ▪ Limitations.
	  ▪ Risk as applied to military police capabilities.
	  ▪ Time analysis.
	  ▪ Essential tasks for critical military police disciplines.
	  ▪ Restated mission.
	• Conduct risk assessment, to include—
	  ▪ Safety.
	  ▪ Police operations.
	  ▪ Police intelligence.
	  ▪ Detention operations.
	  ▪ Security and mobility support.
	  ▪ Protection.
	• Recommend changes to CCIR.
	• Integrate the military police reconnaissance effort.

COA development	• Develop scheme of military police operations. • Analyze relative combat power. • Refine essential tasks for military police disciplines. • Identify military police missions and the allocation of forces and assets. • Determine military police priority of effort and support. • Refine the commander's guidance for military police operations. • Apply military police employment considerations. • Integrate military police operations into each COA.
COA analysis	• War-game and refine the military police plan.
COA comparison	• Recommend a COA.
COA approval	• Finalize the military police plan.

Table 5-2. Military decisionmaking process and the military police running estimate (continued)

MDMP	*Military Police Running Estimate*

Order production	• Provide input to basic OPORD, to include—
	  ▪ Scheme of military police operations.
	  ▪ Essential tasks for military police support.
	  ▪ Subunit instructions.
	  ▪ Coordinating instructions.
	• Include military police information in annexes and appendixes.

Legend:
CCIR   commander's critical information requirements
COA   course of action
IPB   intelligence preparation of the battlefield
MDMP military decisionmaking process
OPORD operation order
POLICE police and prison structures, organized criminal elements, legal systems, investigations   and
 interviews, crime-conducive conditions, and enforcement gaps and mechanisms

PLANS AND ORDERS

5-25. The staff prepares the order or plan by turning the selected course of action into a clear, concise concept of operations and the required supporting information. The concept of operations for the approved course of action becomes the concept of operations for the plan. The course-of-action sketch becomes the basis for the operation overlay. Orders and plans provide all information that subordinates need for execution. Mission orders avoid unnecessary constraints that inhibit subordinate initiative. The staff assists subordinate unit staffs with planning and coordination. (See ADRP 5-0 and ATTP 5-0.1 for more information regarding plans and orders.)

5-26. The military police staff planner provides input for the appropriate paragraphs in the base plan and annexes and appendixes of the plan. Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Manual (CJCSM) 3122.03C is used for joint planning and resulting joint plans and orders. In addition to developing input for the functionally specific paragraphs in the base plan and annexes and appendixes of the plan, military police planners must also review other sections. Military police commanders, provost marshals, and military police staff planners ensure the integration of military police support in appropriate sections and annexes. Military police review the task organization to ensure sufficient capability to meet identified requirements. The military police staff planners recommend appropriate command or support relationships. Considerations for command or support relationships are discussed later in this chapter. Additionally, planners provide input to the flow of the military police force as detailed in the time-phased force and deployment data. Military police review operations sections, annexes, and overlays to ensure the inclusion of any military police graphics that would assist in conveying military police operations.

5-27. Military police information in annexes to the joint force commander, corps, or division operation plan is the principal means through which military police define military police support to the maneuver commander's intent, essential tasks, and coordinating instructions to subordinate commanders. It is not intended to function as the internal order for a military police organization, where the military police commander will articulate intent; the concept of operations; and coordinating instructions to subordinate, supporting, and supported commanders. The preparation of the annex seeks to clarify military police support to the operation plan or operation order and includes—

- The overall description of the concept for military police operations, including approved essential tasks.
- The prioritization of military police disciplines and tasks synchronized with phases of the operation.
- Specialized military police support considerations and coordination for detention operations, customs, forensics, and investigations.

- Military police organizations in the force pool.
- Essential tasks for subordinate military police units.
- Allocations of resources to support military police operations.

5-28. The military police commander, provost marshal, or staff planner may produce a military police overlay in conjunction with the operations overlay to highlight specific military police support to critical operations like a gap-crossing mission, main supply route regulation, enforcement during critical movement periods or detainee dislocated-civilians collection, holding areas, and facilities to show critical flow and holding locations.

COMMAND AND SUPPORT RELATIONSHIPS

5-29. Military police staff planners recommend appropriate command or support relationships based on mission, available assets, and command priorities. Military police assets are extremely limited, especially when those assets are leveraged against high-demand technical policing disciplines, such as detention operations or support to host nation police associated with civil security and civil control requirements during stability tasks. Commanders typically prefer decentralized execution when possible. Major combat operations characterized by offensive operations conducted at a high operational tempo and potential for uncertainty are typically best supported by the decentralized control of functional assets, such as military police or engineers. Commanders and planners must understand when the centralization of military police capabilities are required under the mission command of a military police brigade.

5-30. Centralized control is often the most effective method for managing scarce capabilities or resources required to produce consistent and uniform effects across the entire area of operations. The implementation of initiatives to build host nation policing capability synchronized and coordinated across a theater or area of operations and the consistent conduct of detainee operations are two examples where the centralized control of military police under a military police brigade are warranted. The negative impacts of unsynchronized and inconsistent application of detainee operations or efforts to build host nation policing capability across an area of operations or joint area of operations can have significant strategic implications and cause major delays in operational benchmarks for success. When extensive and long-term military police technical capabilities are required across an area of operations or joint operations area, the military police brigade mission command of military police assets is required to ensure technical oversight, synchronization, coordination, and the consistent application of military police capabilities. This is especially true when stability tasks are dominant within the area of operations.

5-31. The military police platoon organic to a BCT formation has very limited capability to integrate and provide mission command augmenting military police capabilities. When two or more military police platoon equivalents are present in a BCT, a military police company headquarters is required to provide for basic mission command of military police forces. In most cases, a military police company headquarters is capable of providing the necessary additional mission command to orchestrate military police operations and support within the BCT area of operations. A military police company task-organized within a BCT will typically be aligned under the mission command of the BSTB, and the organic military police platoon will be organized under the military police company. These organic military police platoons and other task-organized units may be further task-organized to maneuver task forces when required. In situations where a military police battalion augments a BCT, all military police units will typically be placed under the mission command of the battalion for the synchronization of military police tasks and missions. Military police units augmenting a BCT (and a support or functional brigade) can be task-organized in a command relationship or a support relationship. (See ATTP 5-0.1 for the discussion of command and support relationships.)

5-32. Army command and support relationships allow for flexibility in allocating Army capabilities among various echelons above brigade. Command and support relationships are the basis for building task organizations. Command relationships define command responsibility and authority. The type of command relationship often relates to the expected longevity of the relationship between the headquarters involved.

5-33. Commanders establish support relationships when the subordination of one unit to another is inappropriate. They assign a support relationship when—

- The support is more effective when the supporting unit is controlled by a commander with the requisite technical and tactical expertise.
- The supporting unit supports several units simultaneously. The requirement to set support priorities to allocate resources to supported units exists. Assigning support relationships is one aspect of mission command.
- Several other relationships established by higher headquarters exist with units that are not in command or support relationships. These relationships are limited or specialized to a greater degree than the command and support relationships. These limited relationships are not used when tailoring or task-organizing Army forces. The use of these specialized relationships helps clarify certain aspects of operational or administrative control.

OTHER RESPONSIBILITIES

5-34. The military police staff has many responsibilities beyond those previously discussed. While it is impossible to list every consideration or activity that the military police staff must balance, a few key responsibilities are―

- Parallel planning.
- Working groups, boards, and cells.
- Military police liaison.

PARALLEL PLANNING

5-35. Commanders ensure that plans are sent to subordinates in enough time to allow them to adequately plan and prepare their own operations. To accomplish this, echelons plan in parallel as much as possible. *Parallel planning* is two or more echelons planning for the same operation, sharing information sequentially through warning orders from the higher headquarters prior to the higher headquarters publishing their operation plan or operation order. (ADRP 5-0) It is facilitated by the higher headquarters continuously sharing information with subordinate units concerning planning efforts. Parallel planning requires significant interaction between echelons. With parallel planning, subordinate units do not wait for their higher headquarters to publish an operation order or operation plan to begin their own plans and orders development process. Military police commanders, provost marshals, and military police staff planner conduct a parallel planning process between the supported unit and their task-organized military police units. Although the senior military police commander may be dual-hatted as commander and provost marshal, this relationship is less likely given the assignment of a provost marshal and military police staff planners to the BCT, MEB, division, and corps staff. At the brigade level and above, the senior staff military police planner or provost marshal will not routinely be a supporting military police unit commander. It is critical that provost marshals, staff planners, and unit commanders conduct parallel planning with higher, adjacent, and subordinate military police units to facilitate the synchronized application of military police operations. This parallel process feeds the force commander's military decisionmaking process and provides the required planning information to feed operation plan or operation order and annex development. This parallel effort results in planning documents being published nearly simultaneously, maximizing the time available for mission rehearsal exercises and execution.

5-36. To facilitate effective parallel planning at the military police unit level, military police unit commanders, provost marshals, and staff planners must—

- Understand the higher commander's intent and planning guidance.
- Analyze military police combat power support to the operation plan through the warfighting functions and military police functions.
- Know the manning, training, and equipment capabilities of the military police unit so that the identified tasks can be accomplished within the time allotted.
- Identify risks and methods to mitigate the risks.
- Leverage reachback capabilities, including possible requests for assistance training of in-lieu-of forces to assume security missions before or after their arrival in-theater.

- Analyze the sequences of operational planning and the effects of simultaneously executed operations on military police support.
- Analyze military police support requirements in specialty skill areas, such as customs, forensics, or investigative support.
- Plan for the sustainment of military police operations, ensuring that all logistics requirements were analyzed, accounted for the end state of operations, and resourced to accomplish the mission and facilitate future operations.

WORKING GROUPS, BOARDS, AND CELLS

5-37. Staffs are organized into staff sections. Commanders organize command posts into functional and integrating cells. Cells contain elements from staff sections. In the context of command posts, a cell is a grouping of personnel and equipment by warfighting function (such as movement and maneuver) or purpose (such as maneuver support) to facilitate mission command. Periodically, or as required, ad hoc groupings form to solve problems and coordinate actions. These groups include representatives from within or outside a command post, their composition depends on the issue. These groups are called meetings, working groups, and boards. Each is a control mechanism for regulating a specific action, process, or function. A working group is a temporary grouping of predetermined staff representatives who meet to coordinate and provide recommendations for a particular purpose or function. A board is a temporary grouping of selected staff representatives delegated decision authority for a particular purpose or function (see ADRP 5-0). They are similar to working groups. When the process or activity being synchronized requires command approval, a board is the appropriate forum.

5-38. Commanders at each echelon may establish working groups, boards, or cells to manage and coordinate functional or multifunctional activities. The provost marshal staff will be key members on many of these working groups, boards, and cells and may chair protection-related groups. Working groups conduct staff coordination at the action officer level and prepare materials for decisions to be made at a board. Boards establish policies, procedures, priorities, and oversight to coordinate the efficient use of resources. Cells group personnel from various sections on a headquarters authorization document to integrate key functions, such as cells focused on each warfighting function. The number of and subjects addressed by working groups, boards, and cells depend on the mission, the environment, and the echelon. Typically, higher echelons with broader spans of control will require a greater number of working groups, boards, and cells. Battalion and brigade headquarters normally have fewer working groups than higher echelons; they also tend to be less formal at lower echelons.

5-39. The military police staff participates in numerous meetings, working groups, and boards to ensure integration and synchronization of military police missions and requirements. Military police and USACIDC staff members participate to ensure that specific military police-related information requirements are integrated and police information and police intelligence are fed and fused into the operations process. Military police staff elements will participate in the following:

- Assessment working group.
- Antiterrorism working group.
- Civil-military affairs working group.
- Information engagement working group.
- Intelligence synchronization meeting.
- Intelligence working group.
- Interagency working group.
- Movement synchronization meeting.
- Operations synchronization meeting.
- Operations update and assessment briefing.
- Protection working group.
- Plans or future operations working group.
- Shift change brief.

- Threat working group.
- Targeting working group.

MILITARY POLICE LIAISON

5-40. Providing liaison officers or noncommissioned officers between supporting and supported headquarters is a method of ensuring the continuity of planning efforts. The presence of liaison officers or noncommissioned officers in a headquarters provides real-time access to critical planning decisions and supporting information that guides the parallel planning efforts between headquarters elements. It is often difficult for a headquarters, operating with scarce resources, to give up an officer or liaison team for liaison duties, but the results often outweigh the initial loss. Commanders must give liaison officers and noncommissioned officers full and uncontrolled access to every aspect of staff planning within the headquarters. Only with this access are the liaison officers and noncommissioned officers fully capable of realizing their full use and effectiveness.

5-41. Other possible liaison missions might include—
- Secret Service coordination in support of protective service details.
- MWD coordination with supported agencies.
- Host nation policing activities.
- Interagency and intergovernmental coordination during extended operations.
- Federal, state, or local law enforcement activities during DSCA operations.

OPERATIONS PROCESS

5-42. Unified land operations are executed through a process of planning, preparation, execution, and continuous assessment—the operations process. These cyclic activities may be sequential or simultaneous. They are usually not discrete; they overlap and recur as circumstances demand. While differing significantly in design and application, all missions follow the operations process. The commander drives the operations process. Commanders use the operations process to help decide when and where to make decisions, control operations, and provide command presence. The integrating processes and continuing activities occur during operations process activities. (See ADRP 3-0 and ADRP 5-0 for more information on these processes and activities.)

5-43. The operations process is the context where military police capabilities are integrated and synchronized into combined arms applications. Throughout the operations process, commanders synchronize forces and warfighting functions to accomplish missions. For example, the delivery of fires must be synchronized with target acquisition to produce the desired effects. Finding ways to accomplish the mission with an appropriate mix of lethal and nonlethal force is a paramount consideration for every Army commander. Through synchronization, commanders mass the lethal and nonlethal effects of combat power at the decisive place and time to overwhelm an enemy or dominate the situation. Military police leaders and staff planners at each echelon play a pivotal role in ensuring the synchronization of the variety of military police capabilities that are available to support decisive actions. They synchronize the application of military police functions through the warfighting function framework by integrating them into the operations process.

5-44. Military police units conduct planning and preparation activities integrated within the combined arms task organizations as required by the operation and within their own functional organizations. Combined arms rehearsals are especially critical to the success of complicated operations like gap crossings or passage of lines. Appropriate intelligence requirements and military police reconnaissance assets should be integrated throughout the information collection plan. As required, military police forces will plan and conduct military police missions in support of the primary mission. Resource-intensive and focused operations involving civil control tasks, such as building host nation police capability and capacity, requires extensive planning and coordination within the combined arms staff and headquarters to ensure adequate support and situational understanding by commanders and staffs across the area of operations.

5-45. Military police execute missions and operations as part of an integrated combined arms effort. While some tasks are executed as part of a purely functional unit activity, all executed tasks and missions must be

conducted within the intent and in support of the overall combined arms effort. Effective planning and preparation ensures the successful nesting of tasks and the synchronization of the efforts necessary to ensure that military police execution supports the senior combined arms commander's mission and intent. Throughout the operations process, all activities are continuously assessed to ensure that the desired results are achieved. Assessment precedes and guides every activity in the operations process and concludes each operation or phase of an operation. It involves a comparison of forecasted outcomes to actual events, using measures of effectiveness and measures of performance to judge progress toward success. It entails two distinct tasks—continuously monitoring the situation and progress of the operation toward the commander's desired end state and evaluating the operation against the measures of effectiveness and measures of performance. (See ADRP 5-0 for additional information on assessment.) Military police capabilities may be applied to add technical detail to the commander's assessment. Military police teams collect technically focused police information that enhances situational understanding, protection efforts, movement and trafficability, policing models and strategies, and information focused on the criminal environment. Relevant gathered information is analyzed to produce police intelligence that adds to the depth of the commander's understanding and provides a technical basis for measures of performance and measures of effectiveness. Staffs analyze the situation in terms of mission and/or operational variables to understand the mission and prepare their staff running estimates. They continuously assess the effects of new information on the conduct of the operation; they update staff running estimates and determine if adjustment decisions are required. Military police staffs use the memory aids of PMESII-PT, METT-TC, and POLICE as tools to guide and conduct the analysis and assessment of policing activities and the maintenance of running estimates. Commanders empower their staffs to make adjustments within their areas of expertise. This requires staffs to understand those aspects of operations that require the commander's attention, as opposed to those that are delegated to their control.

MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT TO DECISIVE ACTION

5-46. Decisive action require the simultaneous combination of three elements—offense, defense, and stability or DSCA (see ADRP 3-0). Planning military police support to decisive action is complex and requires an in-depth understanding of the operational environment, the commander's intent, the concept of operations, and the capabilities and limitations of military police in support of the operation. While the tasks of decisive action are discussed separately in the following paragraphs, the tasks are executed simultaneously. The relative weight of any one task in relation to the others is determined by the mission. Military police planners must continually assess and predict shifts in mission requirements and required military police capability as operations transition between phases or as conditions change within the operational environment.

OFFENSE

5-47. Seizing, retaining, and exploiting the initiative to gain physical advantages and achieve definitive results is the essence of the offense. Offensive tasks seek to throw enemy forces off balance, overwhelm their capabilities, disrupt their defenses, and ensure their defeat or destruction by maneuver. An offense ends when the force achieves the purpose of the operation, reaches a limit of advance, or approaches culmination. Army forces conclude an offensive task by consolidating gains through stability tasks, resuming the attack, shifting over to the defense, or preparing for future operations. Army forces conduct four types of offensive tasks—movement to contact, attack, exploitation, and pursuit. (See FM 3-90-1 for more information on the conduct of offensive tasks.)

5-48. Military police operations supporting the offense include the simultaneous application of military police capabilities through synchronizing warfighting functions throughout the depth of the area of operations. Military police operations in close support of maneuver forces are the primary focus during offensive tasks; however, all three disciplines are applied simultaneously to some degree. The primary focus will be support that enables movement and maneuver, provides detention tasks to support captured or detained individuals, and provides protection.

5-49. Military police support to offensive tasks varies according to the type of operation being conducted. The military police disciplines support each combatant commander based on mission variables. In the offense, military police mission priorities are often placed on detention operations and security and

mobility support. Police intelligence activities are integrated throughout the execution of all other military police disciplines; limited police operations may be conducted to facilitate the future transition to stability tasks. Military police leaders supporting offensive tasks must—

- Exercise disciplined initiative within the commander's intent.
- Anticipate selective elements of the offensive force to pause, defend, resupply, or reconstitute while other forces attack.
- Anticipate changes in the tempo of the operation and prepare the military police effort toward that action.
- Provide military police support within the area of responsibility. Military police must understand how operations affect security functions in a joint supportability assessment and/or line of communication; this translates to the protection of mission command and the sustainment of information systems sustainment.
- Understand the intelligence preparation of the battlefield, the commander's critical information requirements, and the priority intelligence requirements and integrate police intelligence activities in all military police operations to support those requirements.
- Conduct police operations within the local population.
- Perform detention operations to reduce the impact on combat forces. (Military police coordinate the treatment of dislocated civilians with the host nation or foreign forces during resettlement.)
- Conduct security and mobility support tasks to assist the commander in speeding the shift of forces to support the main effort and enhancing overall trafficability.
- Anticipate pursuit and exploitation by positioning military police forces to support follow-on forces. Military police organizations support as far forward as possible while protecting sustainment assets.
- Support the movement of maneuver forces, enabling their ability to mass. Military police protect mission command nodes, such as the main command post and tactical command post. The security and mobility support tasks assist in orchestrating the efforts to mass, sustaining the offensive move. Military police quickly attack enemy reconnaissance forces in the area of responsibility. Likewise, military police maintain surveillance, provide early warning, and attack the enemy with supporting and organic fires, ensuring the freedom of action of the force.
- Know the location and composition of probable response forces/tactical combat forces to coordinate and assist in securing the joint supportability assessment against area threats.

5-50. During offensive tasks, military police support provided by military police units provides the commander with an agile, versatile, and capable force ready to contribute to the overall mission success. Figure 4-3, page 4-16, shows a notional application of military police capabilities supporting offensive tasks. Specific military police missions conducted during offensive tasks may include the following:

- Conducting police operations to begin building a greater situational understanding of the police and criminal environment, shaping the future stability effort, and civil security and civil control lines of effort.
- Conducting detention operations to reduce the impact of detainees on combat forces.
- Conducting resettlement to reduce the impact of dislocated civilians on combat forces.
- Conducting security and mobility support tasks, such as support for gap crossings (including river-crossing, passage-of-lines, and breaching operations), convoys and high-risk personnel security.
- Integrating police intelligence activities throughout military police operations to enhance situational understanding and provide a holistic common operational picture.
- Supporting forced-entry operations (plan for detainee operations).
- Supporting cordon-and-search tasks (outer cordon security and detainee operations).

5-51. Military police units use preparation activities to posture military police assets with their task-organized gaining or supported headquarters. Military police units establish early linkups with the maneuver units they will support. As military police units prepare for offensive tasks, they focus on inspections, combined arms rehearsals, the movement of the combined arms force into position for the attack, and the evacuation and control of captured and detained individuals during the offense. Military

police units also join combined arms breaching and gap-crossing forces to conduct rehearsals for the breach, assault, and support forces. The provost marshal at the appropriate echelon coordinates military police capabilities focused to support offensive tasks. Preparation may include establishing protection measures and holding areas for tactical units moving across main supply routes to assembly areas. If route clearance operations are anticipated, military police units join with engineer, CBRN, explosive ordnance disposal, and other forces focused on route reconnaissance, inspections, clearance activities, and the operation of movement corridors. Military police unit preparation activities occur in close proximity and are closely aligned and integrated with maneuver force preparations.

5-52. Provost marshal offices at every echelon coordinate military police unit support to the offensive maneuver plan. Military police assets can be placed in command or support relationships with the maneuver force. Military police assets will require advanced movement on main supply routes to be in place to support movement, given the nature of the heavy and wheeled equipment of the tactical force being employed in offensive tasks. For movement beyond established main supply routes into forward assembly areas, the additional reconnaissance of road networks will be required. Specialized military police assets may also be necessary to accomplish certain missions, such as detention units for detainee operations or USACIDC elements to facilitate criminal investigative support to the commander. At the operational and tactical levels, some military police operations will probably not be conducted as part of a combined arms mission; nonetheless, they must be fully coordinated with the maneuver commander responsible for the area of operations. These operations may also enable the sustainment warfighting function or other areas not directly related to close combat that may be critical to the preparation for an offensive operation (figure-5-2).
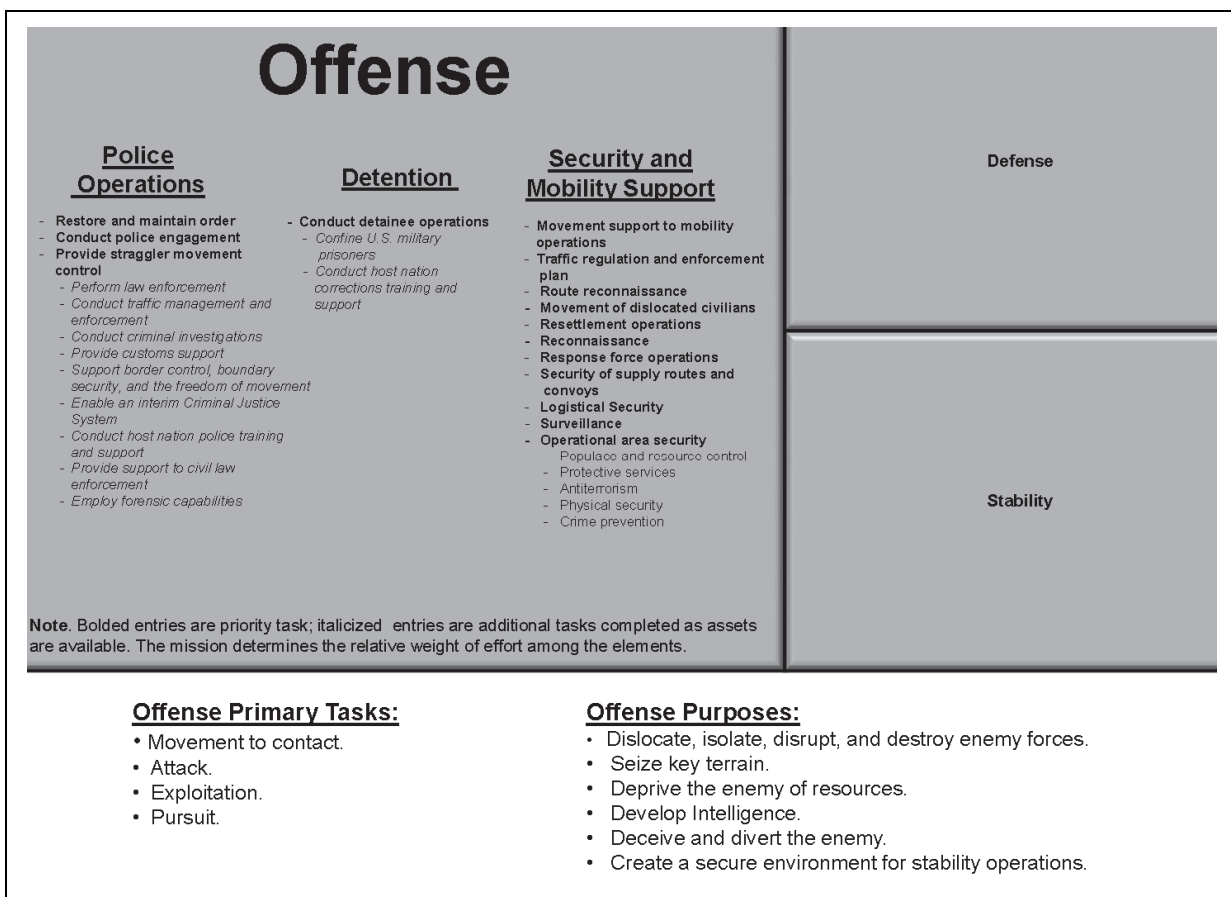
Figure 5-2. Notional military police operations in the offense

5-53. During offensive tasks, measures to protect unit movements, sustainment assets, and high-risk personnel are required. The emphasis lies on preserving the mobility of the force. Stationary mission

command facilities, communications nodes, and critical supplies also require protection to lessen their vulnerability. During the early planning stages, military police units can provide information on main supply route conditions along march routes to facilitate movement and protection for the force.

5-54. When executing offensive tasks, the maneuver force uses its common operational picture to link its detection efforts to maneuver to avoid encountering obstacles along the route of the attack. The maneuver force supported by military police units can actively avoid manmade obstacles by interdicting threat countermobility before emplacement or can passively avoid by identifying, marking, and bypassing. Assessment enables execution as decisions are made to breach or bypass obstacles. Bypasses are preferred whenever possible and may be handed off to follow-on military police units to guide additional forces through the bypass routes. As soon as possible, military police units conduct assessments of the routes to determine trafficability and feasible or suitable improvements to the lines of communication.

DEFENSE

5-55. Defensive tasks are combat operations conducted to defeat an enemy attack, gain time, economize forces, and develop conditions favorable for offensive or stability tasks. The defense alone normally cannot achieve a decision. However, it can create conditions for a counteroffensive operation that lets Army forces regain the initiative. Defensive tasks can also establish a shield behind which stability tasks can progress. Defensive tasks counter enemy offensive tasks. They defeat attacks, destroying as much of the attacking enemy as possible. They also preserve control over land, resources, and populations. Defensive tasks retain terrain, guard populations, and protect critical capabilities against enemy attacks. They can be used to gain time and economize forces so that offensive tasks can be executed elsewhere.

5-56. Defending forces anticipate the enemy attacks and counter them. Waiting for attacks is not a passive activity. Commanders conduct aggressive surveillance, reconnaissance, and security operations to seek out enemy forces and deny information to them. They engage them with Army and joint fires and maneuver to weaken them before close combat. Commanders use combined arms and joint capabilities to attack enemy vulnerabilities and seize the initiative. There are three types of tactical operations associated with defense: mobile defense, area defense, and retrograde defense. FM 3-90-1 provides details on the conduct of defensive tasks.

5-57. Military police operations supporting the defense include the simultaneous application of military police capabilities through synchronized warfighting functions and throughout the depth of the area of operations. Support to defensive operations is consistent with the commander's intent and priorities. Military police support a defending force by assisting in movement and sustainment to maintain the initiative. Military police support reflects the maneuver commander's focus of destroying an attacking force, retaining or denying key terrain, moving away from an enemy force, or a combination of these tasks. In supporting defensive operations, military police leaders must—

- Exercise disciplined initiative within the commander's intent.
- Anticipate operational changes and/or transitions and prepare the military police effort toward that action.
- Provide military police support within the area of responsibility. Military police must understand how operations affect security functions in a joint supportability assessment and/or line of communication; this translates to mission command protection and information system sustainment.
- Understand the intelligence preparation of the battlefield, commander's critical information requirements, and priority intelligence requirements to facilitate the integration of police intelligence activities within all military police operations to support those requirements.
- Conduct police operations within the local population.
- Integrate police intelligence operations within all operations to enhance situational understanding and provide a holistic common operational picture.
- Consider the type and size of the area of responsibility, line-of-communication security, and the threat and plan for detainee operations and dislocated civilians to determine how their presence may affect the movement of forces.

- Perform detention operations to control and protect detainees, resulting from previous offensive or ongoing stability tasks, to reduce the impact on operational forces.
- Coordinate the treatment of dislocated civilians with the host nation or foreign forces.
- Conduct security and mobility support to aid a force to maneuver and mass. Military police must anticipate transitions from the defense to the offense and assist the forward movement of reserves or reaction forces.
- Conduct security and mobility support to deny information to enemy reconnaissance elements seeking the location of the defending force. The military police unit is positioned where it can control key terrain or improve the defensive capability of bases and base clusters. Military police conduct aggressive reconnaissance and surveillance to deny enemy access to critical logistics and sustainment facilities.
- Know the location and composition of probable response forces/tactical combat forces to coordinate and assist in securing the joint supportability assessment against area threats.
- Protect sustainment resources while supporting the lateral, forward, and rearward movement of combat forces.

5-58. Successful military police operations in the defense depend on the leader's understanding of the commander's intent and the ability to properly employ military police resources. Military police perform the three disciplines when assisting the defending commander by providing a lethal, mobile force, permitting the commander to quickly concentrate efforts and resources in fixing the enemy. Figure 5-3 shows a notional application of military police capabilities supporting defensive operations.
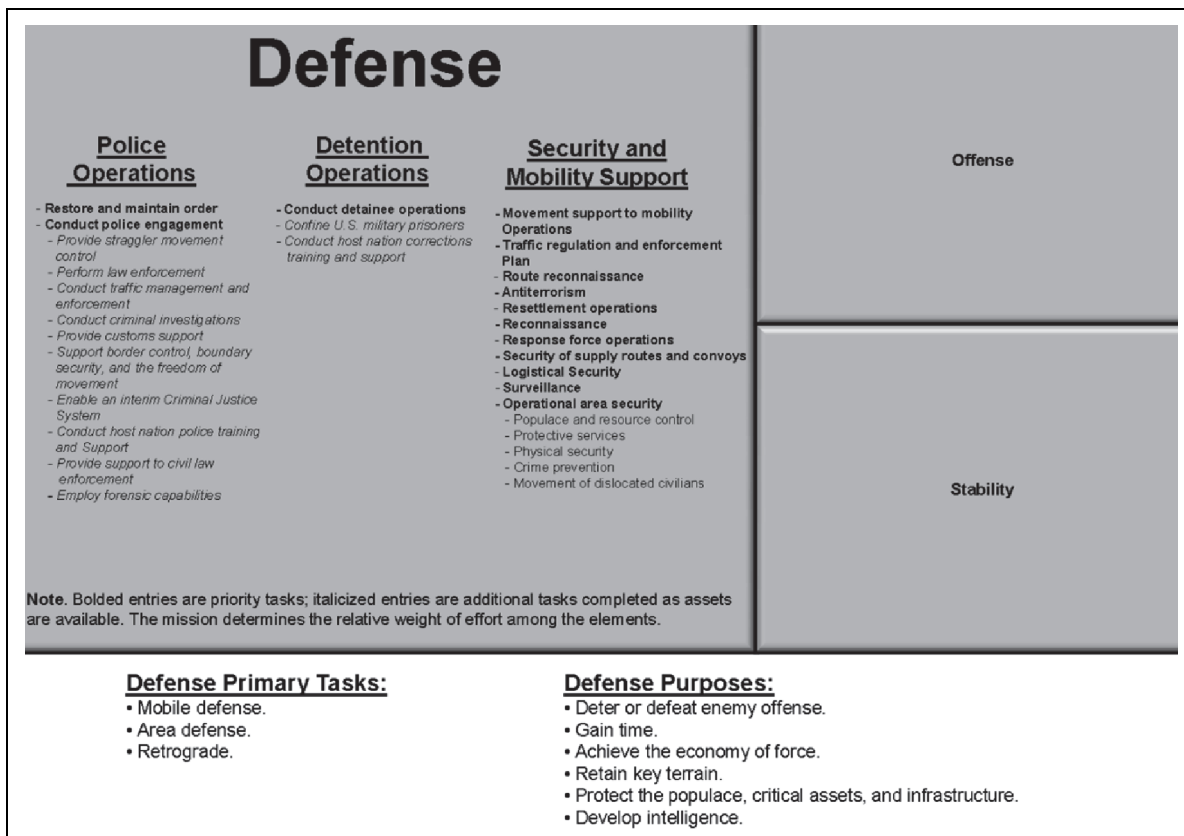
Figure 5-3. Notional military police operations in the defense

5-59. In all three types of defensive primary tasks, the main focus for the military police force is to ensure movement of the repositioning or counterattacking forces and to provide and support the evacuation of captured or detained individuals. Defensive missions demand focused effort to provide the freedom of movement for repositioning forces and the reserve when it is committed. These units are provided the

priority of movement along main supply routes. Additional activities in the defense include providing protection to sustainment activities (including critical headquarters, communications facilities, convoys, and supply sites). Examples of expected missions include—

- Conducting detention operations.
- Establishing a movement corridor.
- Conducting convoy escorts.
- Conducting response force operations.

STABILITY

5-60. Stability tasks involve coercive and constructive military actions. They are designed to establish a safe and secure environment and facilitate reconciliation among local or regional adversaries. Stability tasks can also establish political, legal, social, and economic institutions and support the transition to legitimate local governance. It is essential that stability tasks maintain the initiative by pursuing objectives that resolve the causes of instability. The combination of tasks conducted during stability tasks depend on the situation. Stability consists of five primary tasks—maintain civil security, maintain civil control, restore essential services, provide support to governance, and provide support to economic and infrastructure development. (The primary stability tasks are discussed in detail in FM 3-07.)

5-61. Preparing for stability tasks may be more difficult than preparing for combat operations because of the technical nature of requirements and the broad range of potential military police missions associated with them. An early on-the-ground assessment can be critical to tailor the military police force with required specialties and military police resources. The results of this assessment are passed to planners to ensure that an adequate military police force arrives in the area of operations in a timely manner. This early, on-the-ground military police reconnaissance and associated assessment or survey identifies—

- Basic security requirements and establishes police intelligence within the area of operations.
- Needs of the host nation and necessary military police capabilities to address police operations and detention requirements.
- Other special considerations that will affect the military police force.

5-62. Like offense and defense, military police support for stability tasks includes the simultaneous application of capabilities. Military police disciplines supporting the restoration of essential policing and corrections services in support of civil security and civil order lines of effort are the primary military police focus in stability tasks; however, all three of the military police disciplines are applied simultaneously to some degree. Extensive detention operations may also result from extended stability tasks. Figure 5-4 shows a notional application of military police capabilities providing support to stability tasks.

5-63. Military police can support stability tasks through all three disciplines. However, during stability support operations, the primary focus may be on police operations. Conducting policing activities in support of civil security and civil control lines of effort are critical in establishing the rule of law. Police intelligence operations are integrated and executed continuously throughout all military police operations; this includes potentially establishing, using, and transferring host nation police intelligence operations. Police operations may include the following:

- Conducting police technical assessments to determine critical capability and capacity.
- Establishing a strategic law enforcement stationing plan.
- Executing theater law enforcement operations.
- Establishing, operating, and transferring police stations to trained and skilled host nation police.
- Establishing regional police academies.
- Controlling the movement of civilians and providing relief to human suffering.
- Establishing and training regional/urban police patrol operations (traffic control management and emergency first responder operations).
- Establishing and training special police technical skills (special-reaction teams, emergency response, protective services, riot control, and functional patrols).
- Establishing and training criminal investigative capabilities.
- Establishing indigenous highway patrol capabilities.

- Establishing indigenous police information systems (administrative, logistics, training, and operations).
- Establishing vehicle registration systems.
- Conducting joint information management liaison operations for all required echelons.
- Establishing host nation police reports, forms, databases, and management protocols.
- Recommending the procurement of material to create a police infrastructure, communications equipment, and uniform sets.

Stability

Police Operations
- Restore and maintain order
- Conduct police engagement
- Conduct criminal investigation
- Support border control, boundary security, and freedom of movement
- Enable an interim Criminal Justice System
- Conduct host nation police training and Support
- Employ forensic capabilities
- Provide straggler movement Control
- Perform law enforcement
- Conduct traffic management and enforcement
- Provide customs support
- Provide support to civil law enforcement

Detention
- Conduct detainee operations
- Conduct host nation corrections training and support
- Confine U.S. military prisoners

Security and Mobility Support
- Populace and resource control
- Protective services
- Physical security
- Crime Prevention
- Movement of dislocated civilians
- Traffic regulation and enforcement plan
- Logistical Security
- Antiterrorism
- Route reconnaissance
- Resettlement operations
- Reconnaissance
- Response force operations
- Secure supply routes and convoys
- Surveillance
- Operational area security
- Movement support to mobility operations

Offense

Defense

Note. Bolded entries are priority task; italicized entries are additional tasks completed as assets are available. The mission determines the relative weight of effort among the elements.

Stability Primary Tasks:
- Establish civil security.
- Establish civil control.
- Restore essential services.
- Support governance.
- Support economic and infrastructure development.

Stability Purposes:
- Provide a secure environment.
- Secure land areas.
- Meet the critical needs of the populace.
- Gain support for host nation government.
- Shape the environment for interagency and host-nation success.

Figure 5-4. Notional military police operations supporting stability

5-64. Military police detention operations support to host nations critical during stability operation is. Detainees must be effectively managed and transferred to appropriately trained and disciplined host nation police. Specific military police detention operations conducted during stability tasks may include the following:

- Conducting prison or detention technical assessments to determine critical capability and capacity.
- Establishing a strategic detainee/corrections system template.
- Executing theater detainee operations.
- Establishing, operating, and transferring theater level detention facilities to host nation control.
- Establishing regional detainee/corrections academies.
- Transferring/adjudicating criminal detainees.
- Establishing juvenile detainee operations.
- Training special teams (special-reaction, forced cell move, escort, and riot control teams).
- Conducting facility security and protection efforts.
- Conducting multilevel information management liaison operations.

- Establishing rehabilitative and reconciliation programs to facilitate the return of detainees to society.
- Providing detainee/corrections reform transition teams.
- Recommending the procurement of detention infrastructure (utilities, communications equipment, and uniforms).
- Establishing indigenous detainee automation/information systems (administration, logistics, operations, and training).
- Establishing standard detainee reports, forms, databases, and management protocols.
- Establishing and supporting resettlement facilities in support of civil affairs operations.

5-65. Stability tasks tend to be of long duration compared to the other task of decisive action. As such, the military police level of effort is very high at the onset and decreases as the theater and host nation capabilities mature. Preparation activities include determining the level of the civil rule of law in the policing and corrections services and identifying significant infrastructure and base development construction projects for police stations, training centers, and corrections institutions. The highest priority projects may be executed using general engineering capabilities, while others may compete for contingency funding and execution through a contract capability. Military police forces may be engaged in counterinsurgency type operations as the security structure of the host nation evolves.

5-66. The military police capabilities and their operational and supporting tasks are integral to stability tasks. Military police related skills are highly compatible and essential to the end state of stability tasks, and the military police force provides a highly capable, politically acceptable force suitable for a variety of stability tasks. They possess robust capabilities to shoot, move, and communicate, but are trained to exercise judgment and resolve issues using the lowest level of force possible according to the use-of-force continuum. Military police are trained to transition to deadly force only when all other options have been exhausted. Military police units must project a professional law enforcement and policing image. This presence is extremely important when tailoring a force that requires significant capabilities with a low political profile.

5-67. Military police missions must be prioritized to achieve the greatest mission effect. The specific discipline performed at a given time is determined by the supported commander's needs and the availability of military police resources. The supported commander, taking into consideration the recommendations of the provost marshal, sets the functional priorities for military police operations. The provost marshal will often need to prioritize tasks to accomplish the requirements for military police support.

5-68. Military police capabilities are further enhanced by their training, policing mind-set, and experience in dealing with people in highly stressful and confusing situations. Military police can conduct combat operations when required, but are highly practiced in escalation-of-force considerations and the employment of the minimum-essential force to contain potentially violent situations. This mind-set serves as the framework for military police law enforcement training and is critical in military police support for stability tasks. Furthermore, this policing mind-set is exercised and reinforced daily in peacetime law enforcement activities. Military police learn and receive constant reinforcement training in controlling the level of violence in a situation and have the ability to make on-the-spot decisions to deescalate a situation, minimizing the possible loss of control.

5-69. Military police with detention skills have the necessary training and experience to advise host nation corrections authorities to get operations up and running. USACIDC special agents have the investigative skills to complete complex criminal and war crime investigations or train investigative techniques to host nation police personnel.

5-70. Four essential training competencies are stressed for military police Soldiers: technical and tactical proficiency, the understanding of human dimension and attitude, a strong sense of camaraderie and teamwork, and leadership. These competencies are the foundation for all military police operational performances and are especially important to stability tasks. They mentally equip the military police Soldier to exercise discretion in dealing with others and to protect and assist those in need. These abilities permit the military police Soldier to accomplish the varying demands in stability tasks.

5-71. Civil affairs forces may be critical in supporting military police operations, which typically can include activities and interface with non-military organizations and military forces. Similarly, military police capabilities may be applied to provide specific technical support integrated within the civil affairs plan. Integration occurs through the operations process activities and is facilitated by coordination among military police planners and civil affairs staff at the civil-military operations center. Civil affairs operations are covered in-depth in FM 3-57.

DEFENSE SUPPORT OF CIVIL AUTHORITIES

5-72. Military police first responder capabilities are key aspects to the DSCA mission. *Defense support of civil authorities* is support provided by U.S. federal military forces, DOD civilians, DOD contract personnel, DOD component assets, and National Guard forces (when the Secretary of Defense, in coordination with the Governors of the States, elects and requests to use those forces in title 32, United States Code, status) in response to requests for assistance from civil authorities for domestic emergencies, law enforcement support, and other domestic activities, or from qualifying entities for special events. DSCA missions are also known as *civil support missions.* (DODD 3025.18) Military police support to domestic operations is constrained by various laws. (See ADP 3-28 and ADRP 3-28.) It is accurate to say that most military police tasks performed in domestic support are common to overseas operations; however, military police conduct them under very different conditions. Figure 5-5 identifies military police capabilities that are conducted in DSCA if authorized by law.

Defense Support Of Civil Authorities

Police Operations	Detention	Security and Mobility Support	Offense
- **Provide support to civil law Enforcement** - **Restore and maintain order** - Conduct police engagement - *Conduct traffic management and enforcement* - *Provide customs support* - *Support border control, boundary security, and freedom of movement*	-Confine U.S. military prisoners	- *Resettlement operations* - *Movement of dislocated civilians* - *Protective services* - *Physical security* - *Crime prevention* - *Antiterrorism*	Defense

Note. Bolded entries are priority task; italicized entries are additional tasks completed as assets are available. The mission determines the relative weight of effort among the elements.

Defense support of Civil Authorities Tasks:
• Provide support for domestic disasters.
• Provide support for domestic chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear incidents.
• Provide support for domestic civilian law enforcement agencies.
• Provide other designated support.

Defense support of Civil Authorities Purposes:
• Save Lives.
• Restore essential services.
• Maintain or restore law and order.
• Protect infrastructure and property.
• Maintain or restore local government.
• Shape the environment for interagency success.

Figure 5-5. Notional military police operations during DSCA

5-73. Numerous features of DSCA are distinct from other decisive action tasks. DSCA tasks stress the employment of nondestructive means to save lives, alleviate suffering, and protect property. The Army National Guard is often the first military force to respond on behalf of state authorities. Army DSCA includes four primary tasks: provide support for domestic disasters, provide support for domestic CBRN

incidents, support civil law enforcement agencies, and provide other designated support as required. (See ADP 3-28 and ADRP 3-28 for additional information on DSCA.)

5-74. Military police operations in DSCA may include the simultaneous application of all military police disciplines. Specialized military police capabilities also have the potential to be employed. Military police support may be required for Army forces providing mission command, protection, and sustainment to government agencies at all levels until they can function normally. In a martial law situation, extensive military police support may be required. Military police Soldiers have the essential training and technical capabilities needed for relief operations, focusing on restoring civil order. The restoration of civil order requires—

- Operational unity.
- Effective coordination.
- Public acceptance.
- Threat awareness.
- Minimal use of force.

5-75. There are few unique military police missions performed in DSCA that are not performed during other operations. The difference is the context in which they are performed. The Posse Comitatus Act carefully limits the actions that military forces, particularly Regular Army units (to include federalized National Guard units), can conduct within the United States and its territories. National Guard units, remaining under the control of their respective state governors, are not restricted in the manner that federal (active duty) forces are restricted. In addition to legal differences, civil support operations are always conducted in support of state and federal agencies. Army forces cooperate and synchronize their efforts closely with them. These agencies are trained, resourced, and equipped more extensively than similar agencies involved in stability operations overseas. Policies issued by the federal government govern the essential services that Army forces provide in response to a disaster. Within this context of support to federal agencies, the focus for military police during DSCA support operations is to support federal agencies restoring essential services. Essential services of concern for military police include—

- Rescues.
- Food and water.
- Emergency shelter.
- Basic sanitation, including sewage and garbage disposal.
- Minimum-essential access to affected areas.

Chapter 6

Sustainment Support

Successful military police operations include the effective incorporation of sustainment support. Sustainment for organic military police units and, in general, military police companies and below, includes the functions of supply, field services, transportation, maintenance, ordnance (minus explosive ordnance disposal), health service support, personnel services, and selected general engineer support. The assignment of military police elements to BCTs includes responsibility for their sustainment support. All sustainment support is provided by, or coordinated through, the BSTB for the military police platoons of the ABCT and the IBCT, the brigade support battalion, and the headquarters and headquarters company of the SBCT. For other military police units throughout the area of operations, integration into an area or theater support structure will be required. This chapter focuses on sustainment support for military police capabilities and highlights the sustainment considerations that will affect military police operations.

RESPONSIBILITIES

6-1. Military police commanders and staff are essential to the sustainment of military police organizations and capabilities operating at every echelon. Sustainment for military police units and capabilities organic, assigned, or attached directly to a supported unit is the responsibility of the leaders and staff of the unit they support, but the higher-echelon provost marshal will retain an interest in the status of their support. The provost marshal must also work closely with the supported unit logistics staff to assist in planning, preparing, executing, and assessing operations that require specialized military police assets or when a particular mission will be sustainment heavy (such as detention or resettlement missions). When military police or multifunctional headquarters are provided, the organic logistics staff within that headquarters provides sustainment planning for the military police force under its mission command. (See ADRP 4-0 for additional information on sustainment doctrine. For information on multinational support, see JP 4-07 and JP 4-08.)

6-2. At the military police unit level, the basic sustainment responsibilities are to monitor, report, and request requirements through the correct channels and to ensure that sustainment requirements are met when sustainment is brought forward to the military police unit. The military police company executive officer, first sergeant, and supply sergeant are normally in charge of these tasks within military police companies; and they receive guidance and oversight from the commander. They are also responsible for supporting any augmentation they receive. The accurate and timely submission of personnel and logistics reports, other necessary information, and requests are essential.

6-3. Military police plan to meet the changing requirements of the operation. The military police sustainment system should be versatile enough to keep pace with rapid decision cycles and mission execution, while also reacting rapidly to crises or opportunities. Military police planners are sensitive to military police task organization changes. Military police units can normally respond to a change in task organization much quicker than theater sustainment packages can. Because of this, contingency military police sustainment plans are normally developed. Military police consider joint, multinational, contracted civilian, and interagency assets when planning support for operations. They—

- Use all available resources to the fullest, especially host nation assets.
- Prioritize critical military police activities based on the concept of operations.
- Anticipate military police requirements based on war games and the rehearsal of concept drills, incorporating experience and historical knowledge.

- Organize and resource for simultaneous and noncontiguous operations.
- Participate in and evaluate the military police significance of each phase of the operation during the entire command estimate process, to include mission analysis, course-of-action development, analysis and war games, recommendation, and execution.

6-4. The provost marshal and the military police unit commander forecast future requirements and accumulate assets needed to accommodate likely contingencies. Military police missions frequently require—

- Significant fuel resupply capability due to high fuel consumption rates.
- Nonlethal ammunition or technology required for security, policing, and law enforcement activities.
- Military police-specific Class IX repair parts, often requiring additional coordination to obtain.
- Large amounts of detention or resettlement sustainment materials.
- Military police-specific Class I and II supplies, which may require additional out-of-theater coordination.
- Maintenance and transportation support.
- Financial management support for the procurement process to facilitate the contracting of locally available commercial services and materials. Procurement support includes contracting support and commercial vendor services support (see FM 1-06).
- Construction and nonstandard Class IV materials support for detention or resettlement missions.
- Legal support for detention missions.
- Dedicated mess, shower, and laundry facilities for detention or resettlement missions.
- MWD veterinarian and other sustainment support.
- Commercial, off-the-shelf equipment required for policing and security operations, such as—
  - Lighting equipment.
  - Forensic collection equipment and biometric collection devices.
  - Evidence-processing materials and equipment.
  - Law enforcement-related equipment critical for police and prison or detention missions.

PROVOST MARSHAL

6-5. The provost marshal at each echelon is reponsible for military police logistics estimates and plans and monitors military police-related sustainment support for military police missions at that echelon. When military police augmentation is required, the provost marshal recommends the most effective command and support relationship. The provost marshal or subordinate staff member—

- Writes the provost marshal annex and associated appendixes to the operation plan or operation order to support the commander's intent, including a recommended distribution for any military police-related, command-regulated classes of supply and special equipment.
- Assists in planning the locations of the forward supply point that will be used for the delivery of military police-configured loads of Class IV and V material. This site is coordinated with the unit responsible for the terrain and the appropriate logistics staff officer (S-4) or assistant chief of staff, logistics (G-4).
- Assists in planning the locations of the military police equipment for the pre-positioning of critical equipment sets, such as detention or resettlement materials. These sites are coordinated with the unit responsible for the terrain and the appropriate S-4/G-4.
- Works closely with the sustainment staff to identify available assets and recommends priorities to the sustainment planners.
- Identifies extraordinary medical evacuation requirements or coverage issues for military police units and coordinates with sustainment planners to ensure that the supporting unit can accomplish these special workloads.
- Identifies critical military police equipment and military police mission logistics shortages.

- Provides (in conjunction with the engineer coordinator) the appropriate S-4/G-4 with an initial estimate of supplies needed to support detention or resettlement missions and tracks their status.
- Tracks the flow of mission-critical Class IV and V supplies into support areas and forwards supplies to the supporting military police units. Coordinates to provide military police personnel support as required to accept delivery of critical supplies.
- Coordinates for explosive ordnance disposal support and integration as necessary.
- Coordinates MWD logistics support requirements, including veterinarian services; kennel facilities; food; narcotic and explosive training aids; and maintenance for vehicles, weapons, and other equipment. Educates leaders about necessary support requirements when supported by MWDs.

UNIT COMMANDER

6-6. The unit commander ensures that sustainment operations maintain the mission capabilities of the unit and its ability to provide combat power. The unit commander provides critical insight during the supported unit planning process. The unit commander—

- Coordinates for sustainment support requirements external to the military police unit.
- Anticipates problems, works to avoid delays in planning and battle transition, and conducts sustainment battle tracking.
- Communicates with subordinate leaders to identify the need for push packages, ensures their arrival, and tracks their expenditure.
- Determines the location of the unit resupply points and monitors the operation.
- Ensures that the unit is executing sustainment operations according to the supported unit standing operating procedures and operation order.
- Monitors equipment locations and maintenance status.
- Tracks military police equipment use, maintenance deadlines, and fuel consumption.
- Receives, consolidates, and forwards logistics, administrative, personnel, and casualty reports to the parent or supported unit.
- Directs and supervises the medical support within the unit, coordinating for additional support as required.
- Supervises and monitors the evacuation of casualties, detainees, and damaged equipment.
- Orients personnel replacements and assigns personnel to subordinate units.
- Conducts sustainment rehearsals at the unit level.
- Maintains and provides supplies for unit field sanitation activities.
- Integrates explosive ordnance disposal support as necessary.
- Manages, supports, and employs MWDs.

6-7. Military police leaders should seek to ensure that, wherever possible, contract personnel supporting military police operations have accompanying security packages provided by the contractor or another authorized source. It is also imperative that military police commanders and staffs fully understand the key differences between contracted and organic military support. These differences include—

- Contractors are not in the chain of command. They are managed through their contracts and the contract management system, which should always include a unit contracting officer representative.
- Contractors perform only tasks specified in contracts; "other duties as assigned" does not apply.

CONSIDERATIONS

6-8. There are several special considerations for sustainment planning that military police commanders and staffs need to address. These include mission-specific planning for detention and resettlement missions and several other military police missions. Any detention or resettlement mission will include a requirement to be proactive in planning and require the provost marshal to work closely with the engineer coordinator and logistics planners to ensure the adequacy and timeliness of the facilities and support

necessary to construct, maintain, and sustain detention or resettlement facilities. The material provided in this chapter is only meant as an overview to the types of planning that must be accomplished to ensure successful detention or resettlement mission accomplishment in terms of facilities and other sustainment considerations.

6-9.   As with all operations, when the supported unit receives a warning order (directly or implied) as part of the military decisionmaking process, the provost marshal initiates the logistics estimate process. The provost marshal focuses the logistics estimate on the sustainment of all subordinate military police units that are organic and task-organized in support of the unit. Generally, Class I, III, IV, and V supplies and personnel losses are the essential elements in the estimate process. Other classes of supply (II, VI, and IX) may be required for detention or resettlement missions. Close integration with the sustainment support unit can simplify and accelerate this process through an automated systems logistics status report to ensure that the sustainment support unit is able to maintain an up-to-date picture of the military police unit sustainment requirements. In the case of detention or resettlement missions, this planning must take into account the projected population that will be serviced in detention or resettlement; these demands can be significant. During continuous operations, the estimate process supporting the rapid decisionmaking and synchronization process may need to be abbreviated because of time constraints.

6-10. After conducting the estimate process to determine the requirements for unit and mission sustainment, the provost marshal, with the respective S-4/G-4, compares the requirements with the reported status of subordinate units to determine the specific amount of supplies needed to support the operation. These requirements are then coordinated with the sustainment support unit or forward support element to ensure that the needed supplies are identified and resourced from higher-echelon stocks.

6-11. The provost marshal then translates the estimate into specific plans. This will include requirements for maintenance, ammunition, supply and field services, transportation, health service support, and human resources support. Postconflict considerations and planning must be integrated into the planning process.

6-12. In each type of BCT, the provost marshal, working with the appropriate sustainment planner and executor, tracks essential sustainment tasks involving all military police units supporting the brigade. Accurate and timely status reporting assists the provost marshal in providing the overall military police status to the brigade commander and allows the provost marshal to intercede in critical sustainment problems when necessary. The provost marshal also ensures that supplies needed by augmenting military police units to execute missions for the brigade are integrated into the brigade sustainment plans. For the provost marshal to execute these missions properly, accurate and timely reporting and close coordination between the provost marshal, sustainment planners and providers, and the various BCT organizations and supporting echelons-above-brigade units (to include the MEB) are essential. Supporting echelons-above-brigade military police units must affect linkup with the existing sustainment to ensure their synchronization of effort.

6-13. Much like individual military police platoons that are not organic to a BCT, USACIDC elements will be reliant on the supported unit for sustainment. USACIDC elements, which generally consist of a two-Soldier team, will turn to the military police unit within the area of responsibility for sustainment support. These elements are ill-equipped to conduct operations other than police operations. Military police unit commanders must consider that they may be required to provide support to USACIDC elements. A further discussion of USACIDC and its elements can be found in chapter 7.

FUNCTION-FOCUSED PLANNING

6-14. Each of the military police disciplines has focused considerations that can be generally applied, and some of these are listed below. These considerations flow from the discussion of the military police disciplines in chapter 3.

Police Operations

6-15. This mission, while a traditional one, varies with conditions. During major combat operations, police operations have a limited role and very little nontraditional sustainment support is required. Class I, III, V, and IX supply items will be the major items required. The commander must recognize that the military

police platoon will likely be reliant on the supported unit for these materials, and coordination between military police and supported units should be accomplished to ensure support.

6-16. Postconflict sustainment during police operations will vary based on the environment, specific mission requirements within the area of operations, and available host nation resources. The length and duration of the mission will mandate sustainment requirements. Sustainment planning must address many logistics considerations for supporting police operations missions which cannot be supported within the Army supply system; much of the police equipment required for extended and effective law enforcement operations must be purchased as commercial, off-the-shelf items.

6-17. Ongoing law enforcement missions require extensive support in expendable administrative supplies and routine policing and investigations supplies, such as evidence collection supplies, biometric collection materials, and safety equipment. Depending on the environment and the duration of operations, communications equipment, speed measuring devices, emergency lighting, and a myriad of other materials may be required. Planners should identify ongoing logistics requirements early and develop and coordinate an appropriate military police support plan.

Detention Operations

6-18. The detention operations discipline is perhaps the most sustainment-intensive of all military police missions. As previously stated, the Army is DOD executive agent for detainee operations. Additionally, the Army is the DOD executive agent for the long-term confinement of U.S. military prisoners. Within the Army and through the geographic combatant commander, military police units are tasked with coordinating shelter, protection, accountability, and sustainment for detainees. The detention operations discipline addresses military police roles and responsibilities when managing detainees and U.S. military prisoners. All classes of supply need to be considered. There are several classes of detainees, and each has specific sustainment requirements.

Detention Facilities

6-19. The provost marshal (in conjunction with the engineer coordinator and logistics planners) must plan for the acquisition of uncontaminated land and facilities, including—

- Operational facilities (such as military police unit headquarters, military and civilian police stations, combatant and U.S. military prisoner confinement facilities, and detention facilities).
- Logistics facilities (such as maintenance and supply facilities and support facilities for detention sustainment).

6-20. The combatant commander, in coordination with other Service components, specifies the construction standards for facilities in the theater to optimize the effort expended on any given facility, while ensuring that the facilities are adequate for health, safety, and mission accomplishment. Figure 6-1, page 6-6, shows the beddown and basing continuum and highlights the need for early master planning efforts to help facilitate transition to more permanent facilities as operations develop. Construction standards are guidelines, and military police must consider other factors when planning detention facilities. (See FM 3-34.400 and JP 3-34 for additional discussion of construction standards.)

6-21. The combatant commander determines what facilities are needed to satisfy operational requirements. Facilities are grouped into six broad categories that emphasize the use of existing assets over new construction. To the maximum extent possible, facilities or real estate requirements should be met from these categories in the following priority order:

- U.S.-owned, -occupied, or -leased facilities (including captured facilities).
- U.S.-owned facility substitutes, pre-positioned in-theater.
- Host nation and multinational support where an agreement exists for the host nation, allied, or coalition nation to provide specific types and quantities of facilities at specified times in designated locations.
- Facilities available from commercial sources.

- U.S.-owned facility substitutes that are in the United States.
- Construction of facilities that are considered shortfall after an assessment of the available existing assets.
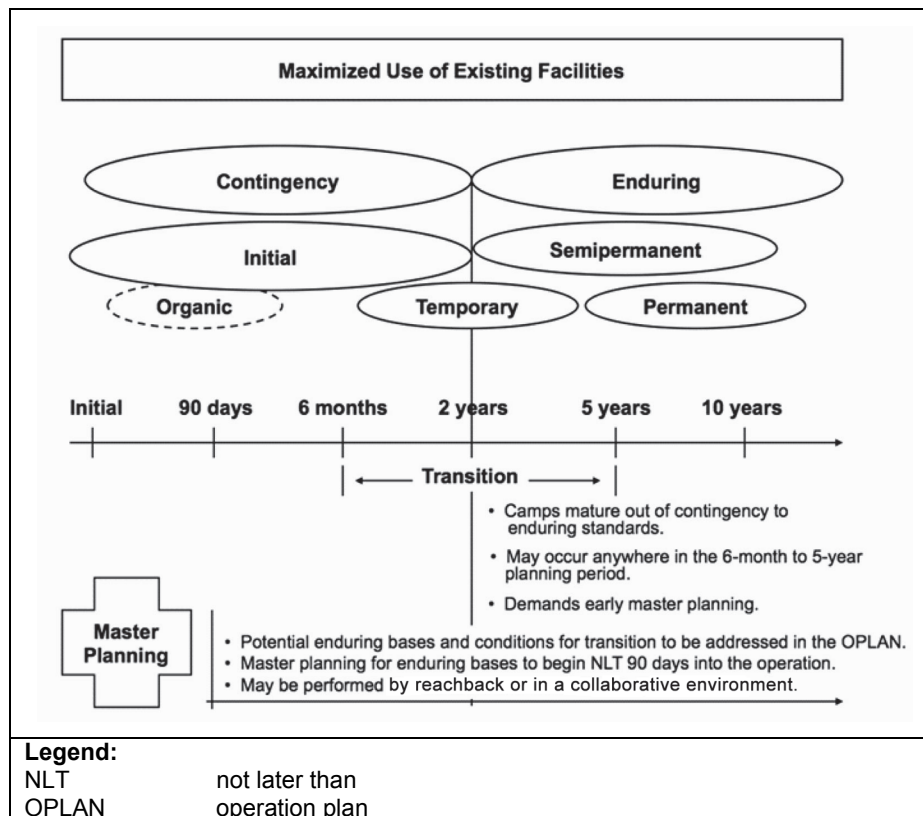
Figure 6-1. Force beddown and basing continuum

6-22. Military police staffs should plan expeditious construction of facility requirements that are considered shortfalls (such as those facilities that cannot be sourced from existing assets). In these circumstances, the appropriate Service, host nation, alliance, or coalition should, to the extent possible, perform construction during peacetime. Contracted support should be used to augment military capabilities. If time or resource constraints prevent new construction from being finished in time to meet mission requirements or antiterrorism requirements, the provost marshal (in conjunction with the engineer coordinator) should seek alternative solutions to new construction. Expedient construction (rapid construction techniques such as prefabricated buildings or clamshell structures) should also be considered, because these methods can be selectively employed with minimum time, cost, and risk. The provost marshal and engineer coordinator should plan for the capability to expand the size of the facility to support an increase in detention population levels and to support future on-site reconciliation programs and services.

6-23. The combatant commander is also responsible for the detention mission and provides engineer and logistics support to the military police commander for the establishment and maintenance of detention facilities. Planning for the construction of detention facilities must occur early in the operational plan. This provides timely notification of engineers, selection and development of facility sites, and procurement of construction materials. Military police coordinate the location with engineers, logistics units, higher headquarters, and the host nation. The failure to properly consider and correctly evaluate all factors may increase the logistics and personnel efforts required to support detention missions.

6-24. If a detention facility is improperly located, the entire detainee population may require relocation when resources are scarce. When selecting a site for a facility, consider the following:

- Locations where detainee labor can most effectively be used.
- Distance from other elements from which additional external security could be drawn upon, if required.
- Potential threat from the detainee population to logistics support operations in the proposed location.
- Threat and boldness of guerrilla activity in the area.
- Attitude of the local civilian population.
- Facility accessibility to support forces and transportation to the site for support elements.
- Proximity to probable target areas (airfields, ammunition storage).
- Classification of detainees to be housed at the site.
- Type of terrain surrounding the site and its conduciveness to escape.
- Distance from the main supply route to the source of logistics support.
- Mission variables.
- Availability of suitable existing facilities (avoids unnecessary construction).
- Presence of swamps, vectors, and other factors (including water drainage) that affect human health.
- Existence of an adequate, satisfactory source of potable water. The supply should meet the demands for consumption, food sanitation, and personal hygiene.
- Availability of electricity. Portable generators can be used as standby and emergency sources of electricity.
- Distance to work, if detainees are employed outside the facility.
- Availability of construction material.
- Soil drainage.
- Health protection for detainees and forces manning the site.
- Other environmental considerations as appropriate.

Detainees

6-25. Detainees are supply-intensive, and planning for those personnel will require extensive and continual coordination with field elements of all types. The construction of detainee holding facilities must be sufficiently secure. Transportation is also a critical requirement for the movement of detainees around the area of operations. Holding facilities must meet health and well-being standards and security requirements. As such, nontraditional supplies must be considered:

- Class I items will be required for detainees and military police personnel. Detainees are entitled to a sundry pack, and sustainment planners must plan for this entitlement.
- Specific Class II clothing will be required for detainees, taking into consideration religious beliefs and accoutrements.
- Class III items will have less consumption than by main supply route patrols, but they cannot be overlooked.
- Class IV supplies will be required, and coordination with engineer personnel for specific construction requirements must be accomplished.
- Nonlethal Class V supplies must be considered in addition to traditional small arms for security personnel.
- Class VI items will also be required and supplied to detainees.

6-26. Medical supplies will normally be supplied by medical personnel. The ongoing medical care of prisoners and detainees is of paramount concern.

U.S. Military Prisoners

6-27. U.S. military prisoners may not be housed with detainees; therefore, a separate facility must be constructed for those personnel. U.S. military prisoners require Class I, II, IV, and VI supplies not only for their safety and security, but also for their health and well-being. If left unaddressed, it will likely lead to unrest. Plans must be made to adequately accommodate military prisoners because there likely will only be one confinement facility in the area of operations. U.S. military prisoners are normally retrograded from the area of operations to permanent facilities; however, this could take an extended period of time.

Security and Mobility Support

6-28. The security and mobility support discipline will typically require a large consumption of Class III supplies. Military police commanders and planners must anticipate extensive Class III and V supply consumption regardless of the specific mission. When the mission involves straggler control, additional Class I, VI, and VIII materials will be required. Gap-crossing, breeching, and passage-of-lines operations will require barrier materials for use in checkpoints. Traffic management operations may require additional capabilities, equipment, and materials for assessment and execution. The military police units and the provost marshal cells coordinate closely with the engineer coordinator and the logistics staff to forecast and assist in managing barrier and construction materials needed for access control and security at fixed-site camps, forward operating bases, checkpoints, and high-risk targets. The commander must consider not only the needs of the individual Soldier when planning for these operations, but also the needs of potential stragglers and/or dislocated civilians.

6-29. Dislocated civilians require much the same sustainment support as detainees, but the level of security and facilities are lessened. The first priority of sustainment support for dislocated civilians is coordination with host nation support activities. If host nation sustainment activities are not available or can only partially meet the requirements, it may be necessary for sustainment planners to coordinate military support for the housing, feeding, security, and general well-being of the civilian population. Coordination with unified action partners will be necessary in most cases to address the issues surrounding dislocated civilians. Normal sustainment channels may not be adequate to provide the necessary sustainment support required.

Police Intelligence Operations

6-30. While not typically viewed as sustainment-intensive, there are aspects associated with police intelligence activities and military police missions that provide information-enabling police intelligence analysis and the production of police intelligence products that may require unique types of sustainment. The increased relevance of police intelligence operations in the operational environment will drive increased requirements for current and emerging technologies and capabilities for collection of information and evidence during military police missions, analyses, and production activities directly associated with police intelligence operations. These requirements will increase the logistics demand for maintenance and technical support and expendable supplies. Commanders and staffs should analyze missions supporting this function to ensure that all unique sustainment is planned for in advance.

Chapter 7

U.S. Army Criminal Investigation Command

The USACIDC is a direct reporting unit that provides criminal investigations support to all levels of command. Examples of USACIDC functions include investigating and deterring felony crimes, conducting sensitive investigations, performing police intelligence activities, conducting protective service operations for designated personnel, providing forensic investigations, maintaining criminal records, conducting crime prevention and antiterrorism analysis, performing logistics security operations, investigating war crimes, performing polygraph investigations, conducting computer crime investigations, and training host nation police on advanced investigations techniques. This chapter discusses the specific investigative, police intelligence, and forensic capabilities that reside within the USACIDC structure and are available for support to the range of military operations.

ORGANIZATION

7-1. USACIDC operations help the commander maintain order and discipline through proactive crime prevention and the investigation of criminal offenses. USACIDC special agents conduct investigations of crimes, such as wrongful deaths, controlled-substance offenses, theft (based on amount limits identified in AR 195-2), fraud, sex crimes, assaults, cybercrime and other national security offenses.

7-2. In a deployed environment, in addition to traditional investigations, USACIDC is responsible for war crime and detainee abuse investigations. USACIDC special agents may also be assigned to battalion, brigade, and higher level staffs within the provost marshal cell to support police operations planning and police intelligence operations integration and to provide advice to the command on evidence and police intelligence collection and targeting. Civilian law enforcement professionals may also be integrated to provide investigative and police intelligence expertise.

7-3. As the primary criminal investigation organization of the Army, USACIDC is a direct reporting unit headquartered at Quantico, Virginia. This direct reporting unit is commanded by a general officer and staffed with officers, warrant officers, enlisted Soldiers, and DA civilian employees. Investigative personnel, regardless of military rank, are known as "CID agents" or "special agents." The command provides overarching management and supervision of all Army criminal investigation functions. Chiefs of staff within USACIDC are responsible for the strategic level of planning and executing command functions. The USACIDC is the approving authority and manager of all agent accreditation functions throughout the command. USACIDC commanders at all levels retain mission command, operational, and UCMJ authority over all assets organic to their subordinate units, regardless of basic command and support relationships. As a result, USACIDC elements are able to give supported commanders an independent, unbiased investigation, free from fear of improper command influence.

7-4. The USACIDC chain of command emanates from the Secretary of the Army, through the Army Chief of Staff. Army, and to the Commander, USACIDC. Coordination is effected with specific agencies and commands as identified in figure 7-1, page 7-2.
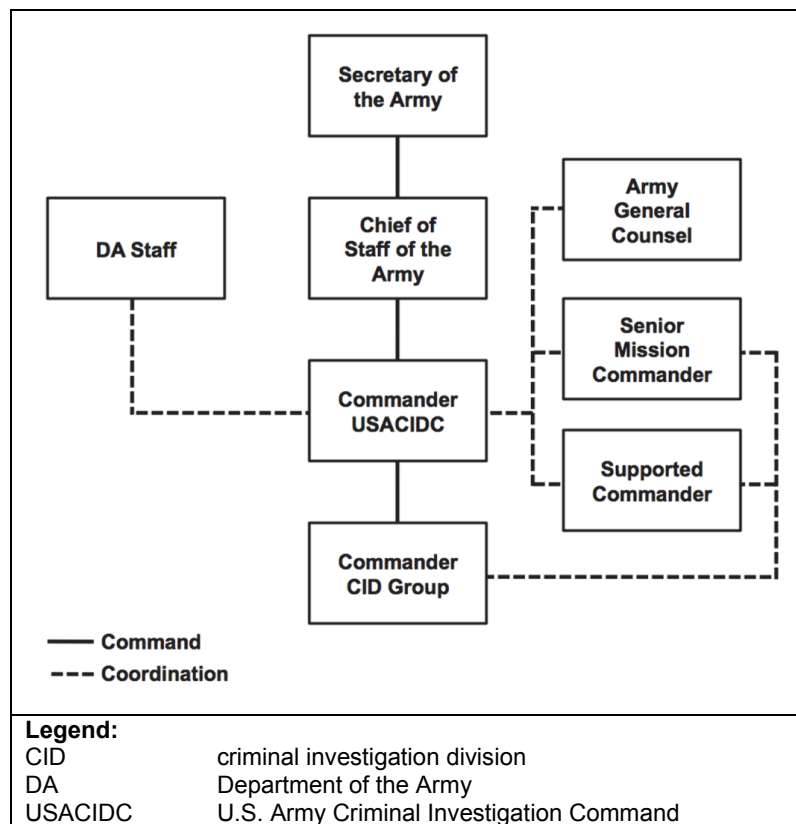
Figure 7-1. USACIDC chain of command and coordination

STRUCTURE

7-5.   USACIDC is composed of supportive tactical units, logistics and administrative operational units, and strategic planning units to support the range of military operations. The USACIDC is unique in that there are tables-of-distribution-and-allowances and tables-of-organization-and-equipment elements at all levels (see figure 7-2). These units, in succession, from strategic to operational and tactical, are—

- USACIDC.
- CID group.
- CID battalion.
- CID element.

7-6.   CID groups are strategic-level subordinate units to USACIDC and provide mission command, strategic planning, and supervision of subordinate CID battalions. CID groups are staffed with officers, warrant officers, enlisted Soldiers, and DA civilians who specialize in operational planning, technical guidance, administrative support, and legal advice within the group and to subordinate units. The group establishes links with supported units in the theater Army and provides planning and oversight on matters pertaining to USACIDC activities. These include criminal investigative support, criminal intelligence activities, polygraph support, and forensic support. CID groups advise CID battalions, elements, and the supported units on the investigative policy, the management of criminal information, crime prevention, and drug suppression programs. CID groups may have a worldwide or specific geographic responsibility.

7-7.   The USACRC is another table-of-distribution-and-allowances unit that is subordinate to USACIDC. The USACRC receives safeguards, maintains, and disseminates criminal information from all Army law enforcement records. These records are retained for a minimum of 40 years (and maintained to support criminal investigations and background checks) before being destroyed. The USACRC correlates and analyzes criminal statistics to provide the Army and other authorized federal agencies with data for planning and executing law enforcement functions. The USACRC conducts more than 10,000 criminal-

history name checks each month to identify victims and perpetrators of criminal offenses. The checks are conducted for military police; special agents; and other military, civilian, and federal law enforcement agencies. The USACRC is also responsible for the review, research, and dissemination of information requested under the Freedom of Information Act. The Army polygraph program administration and worldwide polygraph support are provided by the USACRC.

7-8.   CID battalions are operational units that are subordinate to a CID group and provide mission command, staff supervision, and administrative oversight to the subordinate CID elements. These battalions perform technical supervision and coordination of criminal investigations, criminal intelligence programs, drug suppression activities, polygraph support, and host nation police development; and they manage logistics security. CID battalions have two separate and distinct missions—investigative and support. The investigative mission is controlled to a large extent by a senior CID warrant officer, usually a chief warrant officer four or five, known as the *operations officer*. This warrant officer is responsible for the day-to-day investigative missions of the subordinate elements. The operations officer normally has a staff of subordinate warrant officer special agents who review investigations, provide guidance, and assist in investigative efforts as required. The executive officer facilitates the support functions of the battalion. Routine staff assistance visits and element inspections are conducted by the investigative and support elements of the battalion. These staff assistance visits examine all aspects of the subordinate element, from administration and personnel to investigations and training.

7-9.   CID elements are operational units that are subordinate to a CID battalion (see figure 7-2). The element reports directly to its battalion; however, effective coordination, liaison, and cooperation between CID elements and local military police elements are crucial. CID elements are commanded by an Army warrant officer, typically a chief warrant officer three or four. The element commander, referred to as the *special agent in charge*, or the detachment commander supervises all aspects of the element. This includes the conduct of all criminal investigations, criminal intelligence, logistics, administration, training, and maintenance. The special agent in charge will have a varied number of team chiefs (normally warrant officers) with subordinate warrant officers or enlisted special agents who conduct investigations. Organic to every CID element is an element noncommissioned officer, who is identified as the *detachment sergeant* and is the senior enlisted special agent in the element. The detachment sergeant is responsible for enlisted matters and generally performs as the training, logistics, and administrative noncommissioned officer. In elements without an assigned mechanic, the element sergeant also acts as the maintenance coordinator. Every CID element has an identified criminal intelligence coordinator (typically a civilian employee). Most CID elements also maintain an evidence repository for the accountability and safeguarding of items of physical evidence in criminal investigations. A discussion of the scope of investigative support provided by USACIDC is outlined later in this chapter.
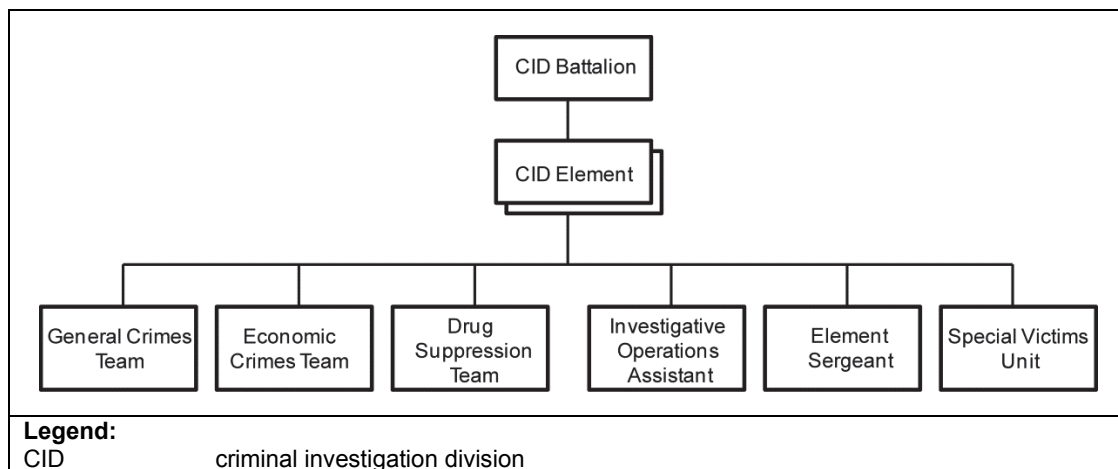
Figure 7-2. Sample CID element organization and capabilities

7-10. Whether at home station or deployed, CID elements perform similar functions, although deployed team composition is typically a two-agent team. The deployed investigative team is further discussed later in this chapter.

7-11. CID elements are assigned to a geographic area of responsibility and normally support organizations within that area of responsibility during peacetime. When deployed to support a specific organization, CID units may be attached to a supported combatant commander; however, the USACIDC retains organizational and administrative mission command to ensure correct procedures for reporting, accreditation, and other actions that are exclusive to CID.

PERSONNEL

7-12. Personnel assigned to CID elements come from several sources. Commissioned officers and enlisted support personnel are assigned by the U.S. Army Human Resources Command. Civilian personnel are hired and assigned through the civilian personnel hiring process. Unit assignments of CID special agents, whether enlisted Soldiers or warrant officers, are controlled and assigned by USACIDC headquarters in concert with the U.S. Army Human Resources Command. These personnel provide support to posts, camps, and stations and provide critical law enforcement capabilities in support of the range of military operations.

7-13. Special agents, which make up the majority of USACIDC assets, are selected by USACIDC headquarters after a formal application process. Upon acceptance, prospective special agents attend an extensive initial training program at USAMPS. The training conducted by USAMPS personnel provides prospective special agents with the requisite skills, knowledge, and abilities to operate in any environment. All special agents serve a 1-year apprenticeship period before being fully accredited.

7-14. Military police Soldiers may be attached or assigned to support CID elements. These Soldiers are selected at the local level; and although operational control belongs to CID, administrative and UCMJ control remains with the parent unit. These military police Soldiers perform duties as military police investigators and can be found conducting drug suppression operations, gang activity investigations, or other criminal investigative functions as designated by the CID special agent in charge.

7-15. The USACIDC also employs civilian personnel with special expertise. Civilian employees with specialized skills in laboratory analysis are hired through normal civilian personnel channels to support forensic analysis requirements and in support of requirements emanating from the range of military operations. The computer investigations unit and the major procurement fraud unit are primarily composed of civilian special agents. These civilian employees are hired through civilian personnel channels and then attend the CID Special Agent Training Course at USAMPS if required.

INVESTIGATIVE MISSION AND SPECIALIZED CAPABILITIES

7-16. Commanders request USACIDC assets to facilitate discipline and order within their areas of operations across the range of military operations. Highly trained CID special agents investigate felony crimes, such as wrongful deaths, war crimes, controlled-substance offenses, high-value theft, fraud, sex crimes, and aggravated assaults as defined in AR 195-2. Special agents can also be called on to conduct investigations outside the parameters of the regulation when they involve sensitive investigations pertaining to senior Army officials and classified programs. Additionally, special agents are called on to advise commanders on a variety of other specialized considerations at the strategic, operational, and tactical levels. (See AR 195-2 for more information regarding the USACIDC mission and specific authorities.)

INVESTIGATIVE MISSION

7-17. Mission requirements of the CID element involve criminal investigations in support of the installation, unit, or geographic commander. These investigations are performed in all operational environments. Investigations typically fall into the following categories:

- **Felony crimes against persons.** These investigations consist of the most serious offenses. Special agents conduct a complete investigation into all deaths that occur on an Army installation and those in which the Army may have an interest. Other examples of crimes against persons include robbery, assault, and child abuse.
- **Drug suppression.** CID elements conduct installation level drug suppression activities on and off the installation. These activities frequently involve undercover (semicovert) operations in

unit and social environments. Covert special agents and attached military police investigators conduct investigations where allegations have been made that Soldiers, civilian employees, or family members are involved in the possession, use, or distribution of any illegal controlled substance. The infiltration of social and military networks by USACIDC personnel will often entail assuming a covert identity. Coordination between CID drug suppression teams and local, state, federal, and host nation law enforcement agencies is routinely accomplished to ensure the unity of the investigation. CID drug suppression teams may also have an overt element that assists unit commanders in unit drug suppression activities through training, education, and the conduct of health and welfare inspections.

- **Economic crimes.** USACIDC units conduct investigations of fraud, waste, and abuse at the installation, unit, and individual levels.
- **Sex crimes.** Special agents complete investigations of sex crimes involving active duty Soldiers, activated National Guard and Reservists on Title 10 status and civilians (in which there is a direct Army interest) on U.S. military installations. These investigations require sensitivity and finesse, and special agents receive extensive specialized training in these areas. Close coordination with Army social work and victim advocacy services and medical treatment facility personnel is required for the successful resolution of sex crimes. The nature of sex crimes frequently requires coordination with off-installation professional services. This coordination is accomplished in concert with Army victim advocacy personnel.
- **Crime prevention.** Crime prevention activities are aggressively and proactively pursued by CID elements on the installation. Special agents evaluate installation activities and units to determine areas susceptible to theft or diversion of military assets or other crime-conducive conditions. Recommendations are then made to the supported commander for improvements that may limit risks.
- **Criminal intelligence.** The USACIDC provides criminal intelligence analysis to commanders that identify indicators of potential crimes and attacks against Army property, facilities, and/or personnel. Criminal intelligence is a subset of police intelligence focused on criminal activity and specific criminal threats. It is much more focused in scope than police intelligence in general, which focuses on police systems, capabilities, infrastructure, and criminal activity and threats. All criminal intelligence is police intelligence, but not all police intelligence is criminal intelligence. Special agents collect, analyze, and process criminal intelligence from the installation and external sources. Local CID elements evaluate, collate, and forward this information to higher CID headquarters. Installation CID elements also receive intelligence information that is passed from external sources to supported installation activities. Criminal intelligence is a critical portion of installation police intelligence operations activities. Specific criminal intelligence—such as methods of operation, distinct patterns, crime techniques, investigative leads, gang violence, and terrorism—is reported to commanders and shared with various intelligence and law enforcement agencies. CID elements also solicit criminal intelligence from military, civilian, and foreign intelligence services.

SPECIALIZED CAPABILITIES

7-18. The nature of the USACIDC mission, regardless of the environment, necessitates several highly specialized elements with special capabilities. These elements are described in the following paragraphs:

- **Field investigative unit.** The field investigative unit is a unique investigative organization, and it conducts the most sensitive criminal investigations in the Army. Much of the activity of the field investigative unit is classified. The unit investigations frequently support the intelligence and acquisition communities. In addition, it conducts investigations of senior Army personnel and classified programs.
- **Protective Services Battalion.** The Protective Services Battalion provides worldwide, executive-level personal protection to the Secretary of Defense; the Deputy Secretary of Defense; the Chairman and Vice Chairman, Joint Staff; the Secretary of the Army; and the Chief of Staff, U.S. Army; their foreign counterparts on official visits to the United States; and other DOD high-risk personnel as directed.

- **Computer crimes investigative unit.** The computer crimes investigative unit conducts investigations involving intrusions and related malicious activities involving U.S. Army computers and networks. The computer crime investigative unit works closely with other U.S. federal and foreign government law enforcement agencies. The computer crime investigative unit also provides expert investigative support to USACIDC field elements conducting criminal investigations with computer implications.
- **Major procurement fraud unit.** The major procurement fraud unit is compromised of highly skilled special agents who conduct investigations involving major Army contracting activities. These units may be colocated at an Army installation or may be a stand-alone element located near a major Army contracting epicenter. The major procurement fraud unit special agents conduct complex multifaceted investigations.
- **Polygraph support element.** Polygraph support for criminal investigative activities conducted by CID elements or military police is provided by specialized special agents. These special agents receive extensive training in polygraph at the Defense Academy for Credibility Assessment. Although normally geographically located within the CID battalion, a polygraph examiner's scope of responsibility is limited to the conduct of polygraph examinations as assigned by the USACRC. Polygraph examiners operate independently from the CID battalion headquarters to which they may be assigned**.**
- **Forensic science officer.** The forensic science officer is a specially trained warrant officer with the ability to conduct complex forensic investigations. This is a unique capability within CID. Upon graduation from specialized training, these personnel are only assigned at the CID group or battalion level. These specialists have advanced training in the identification, preservation, collection, and analysis of evidence. The forensic science officer coordinates with the DFSC on behalf of field agents when technical aspects of the evidence require advanced discussion.

OTHER OPERATIONAL CAPABILITIES

7-19. The USACIDC supports each echelon of command in the area of operations. The CID elements support commanders with resident or reachback CID capabilities. The CID group ensures connectivity among CID units within and external to the theater. It establishes links with supported units and joint, interagency, and multinational authorities on matters pertaining to Army operations. Based on mission variables, the CID group headquarters may provide support from a sanctuary location or colocate with the supported theater Army main command post or the senior military police organization in-theater. Colocation with the senior military police organization in an area of operations provides unified military police support and facilitates sustainment of CID elements. When feasible, CID elements colocate with military police battalions or companies.

7-20. CID elements are staffed and equipped with the minimum mission-essential requirements of equipment and supplies. These elements have minimal organic administrative and logistics capability. They rely on the CID battalion, military police units and occasionally, other organizations for maintenance, supply, and administrative support. This need for sustainment support is the basis for colocating CID elements with military police companies or battalions when possible.

7-21. The small size of CID elements may make it necessary for other elements, typically military police, to support the movement of CID elements to facilitate compliance with protection standards imposed on elements moving within a given area of operations. The operational tempo of an area of operations typically necessitates close coordination with maneuver forces and military police elements. Movement within the area of operations may be accomplished with the assistance of military police combat vehicle escorts. Aviation support may be necessary to facilitate the rapid accomplishment of special investigations.

7-22. The deployed CID investigative team is the smallest operational investigative unit. Each team consists of two special agents ideally, a warrant officer and an enlisted special agent. The operational mission dictates that these teams have the capability to operate independently from their element headquarters. Typically, CID teams attempt to colocate with military police elements when possible. The investigative teams perform criminal investigations within their assigned area of operations.

7-23. In addition to the more traditional investigative tasks, CID elements assume additional roles when deployed and in support of unified land operations. These include, but are not limited to, logistics security assessments, the development of criminal intelligence in support of military operations, specialized protective services, support to training advanced investigative skills to host nation police, providing combatant commanders forensics laboratory support, and unique types of support to police operations, to include war crimes and detainee abuse.

LOGISTICS SECURITY ASSESSMENTS

7-24. A CID investigative team conducts logistics security assessments to detect and prevent the diversion and/or destruction of critical supplies. This function should not be confused with physical security operations, which are outside the scope of CID operations. The CID logistics security assessment role helps protect the sustainment function against criminal activity at all levels of the logistics pipeline, from the manufacturer to the individual Soldier. These actions involve preventing, detecting, and investigating criminal and terrorist activities, such as supply diversion, destruction, and sabotage or product substitution. Logistics security assessment identifies weaknesses in the supply chain, provides suggested solutions, and assists with implementation of preventive measures to reduce vulnerability to sustainment channels. Logistics security also entails attempts to recover materials that have been diverted and return those materials to Army control.

POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS

7-25. CID elements collect criminal information and produce and manage criminal intelligence to deter criminal and terrorist activity. The CID police intelligence operations role in a deployed environment focuses on the identification and prevention of terrorist activities and attacks against the United States and the other multinational military personnel, facilities, and interests. The collection of criminal information and production of criminal intelligence in operational environments are critical to police intelligence operations efforts and the continuous integration within the operations process. At its very heart, subversive activities are criminal offenses that require criminal investigation. CID assets conduct terror-related criminal investigations in-theater when appropriate.

PROTECTIVE SERVICES

7-26. Senior commanders and key personnel are at a significantly greater risk during conflicts and peacekeeping operations. These personnel are subject to the increased likelihood of physical attacks or kidnapping for political purposes. Protective services, trained special agents accomplish executive protection for designated senior commanders and other designated high-risk personnel. These special agents may be augmented by military police personnel when the situation warrants. In some instances, the protective services team may be composed of primarily military police Soldiers other than special agents. Typically, a special agent will be in charge of a larger team. Close coordination between in-theater assets and permanently assigned protection personnel ensures the continuity of protection.

POLICE OPERATIONS SUPPORT

7-27. Special agents in an area of operations provide police operations investigative support. Special agents conduct investigations of crimes against persons, property crimes, and sex crimes. Drug suppression operations and fraud investigations, in overt and covert modes, continue regardless of the area of operations. When directed, CID conducts investigations into allegations of war crimes. Incidents of detainees, dislocated civilians, or local national employees who allege that they were abused by U.S. forces are also investigated by CID elements. CID special agents conduct investigations of violations of international agreements, status-of-forces agreements, and other sensitive incidents as directed by higher authority. When allegations are made that casualties were incurred from friendly forces, a "friendly fire" incident, or a criminal fratricide, special agents may be required to conduct a complete investigation of the incident.

LAW ENFORCEMENT PROFESSIONALS PROGRAM

7-28. The Law Enforcement Professionals Program embeds an operational policing capability directly into corps, division, BCT, and battalion headquarters to assist commanders by providing expertise and methodology to understand, identify, target, interdict, and suppress criminal networks or threats that use criminal enterprises and techniques to support their operations. The program provides experienced law enforcement professionals with technical analytical expertise and investigative skills to understand and identify complex criminal networks, organizations, and activities. These law enforcement professionals are managed by OPMG and integrated in-theater by the echelon provost marshal. The embedded law enforcement experts are civilian or Army investigators (sister Service investigators may be integrated if required) with extensive background and experience in complex criminal investigations.

HOST NATION POLICE SUPPORT

7-29. CID elements may be required to provide special agent support to build police investigative capability and capacity in support of the security force assistance framework. Special agents conduct an initial and accurate assessment of the host nation police investigative abilities. The thorough and accurate assessments of host nation police investigative abilities enables staffs to develop training and advisement plans and goals based on identified capability gaps. Training should be conducted by experienced special agents on investigation techniques, criminal intelligence, crimes against persons, and crimes against property, drug suppression operations, economic crimes, and sex crimes investigations.

Chapter 8

U.S. Army Corrections Command

The Army Corrections System holds members of the armed forces in pretrial confinement and incarcerates those who have been sentenced to confinement by courts-martial. If a military Service member is not returned to duty, the corrections system is committed to releasing that individual from military custody as a productive, law-abiding citizen. This chapter discusses the ACC; its mission, mission command, and organization; and the training of correctional specialists. It describes the foundations necessary for efficient military police corrections operations and discusses the ACC technical oversight of military occupational specialty 31E corrections and detention specialists and their integration into combined arms applications and detention operations at every echelon. Finally, this chapter discusses several special considerations of military prisoner management.

MISSION

8-1.   ACC provides trained detention units, leaders, and Soldiers to conduct detainee operations in support of combatant commander requirements worldwide and executes the Secretary of the Army executive agent responsibilities for long-term corrections and support for detainee operations. ACC exercises mission command of Army corrections system facilities and assigned units to provide the care, custody, control, and rehabilitation of U.S. military prisoners. The ACC develops and administers corrections policy; plans, programs, budgets, and executes resources; and provides oversight to facility design, standardization, and modernization. The ACC coordinates the disposition of all prisoners to include transfers and designation, mandatory supervised release, clemency and parole, and the execution of condemned military prisoners. Strategic objectives include—

- Providing a safe environment for the retributive incarceration of prisoners.
- Protecting communities by incarcerating prisoners.
- Deterring those who might fail to adhere to the law or rules of discipline.
- Providing rehabilitation services to prepare prisoners for release as civilians or for return to duty with the prospect of being productive Soldiers/citizens.
- Supporting commanders worldwide by developing detainee experts through experiential learning in a prison environment.

8-2.   The Secretary of the Army is the DOD executive agent for Level III corrections (sentences that are more than 5 years), and military prisoners transferred to the Federal Bureau of Prisons. The ACC also oversees Level II correctional operations (pretrial and sentences that are up to 5 years) at CONUS Army regional correctional facilities, and Level I correctional operations (pretrial and short-term posttrial up to 1 year) at OCONUS Army regional correctional facilities.

8-3.   The ACC is responsible for correctional operations that provide experiential learning for military occupational specialty 31E Soldiers preparing for deployment in support of detention operations worldwide. Military police detention Soldiers are those who have been specifically trained for corrections and detention missions within the military police career management field and are awarded the military occupational specialty of 31E. (See AR 190-47 for complete details on Army corrections.)

MISSION COMMAND

8-4.   The OPMG is the Army strategic-level planning and coordination lead for all aspects of corrections. In 2007, OPMG realigned the Army Corrections System and established a field-operating agency titled the

ACC. The ACC standardizes corrections functions across the Army by assuming mission command, operational, administrative, and support functions over the Army Corrections System.

ORGANIZATION

8-5. The ACC is headquartered in Alexandria, Virginia and is staffed with military and civilian personnel. The command headquarters is composed of three sections—the command group, resource management division, and operations/plans division. ACC is a generating force headquarters consisting of some elements that are part of the operational force.

8-6. The ACC was established to divest Army commands (the U.S. Army Forces Command and TRADOC) and Army service component commands (U.S. Army Europe, Seventh Army and U.S. Army, Pacific Command Eighth Army) of the corrections mission and align that responsibility under a single command. ACC standardizes corrections operations across the Army Corrections System. This realignment consolidated the mission command of the Army Corrections System facilities and table-of-distribution and allowances elements under ACC. The organizations remain in place as tenants on their installations, but are now subordinate to ACC.

ARMY CORRECTIONS SYSTEM

8-7. To maintain good order and discipline within the Army, ACC ensures that corrections operations are standardized throughout all of the Army correctional facilities. Operations in ACC correctional facilities are conducted to national corrections standards. Correctional facilities require specially trained military police Soldiers, officers, and civilians to plan and conduct corrections operations. Persons subject to the UCMJ that are convicted of a crime by a court-martial or military tribunal are transferred to the Army Corrections System facilities commanded by ACC. These correctional facilities conduct the terms of incarceration as determined by the court. The U.S. Disciplinary Barracks located at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, is a Level III facility. It is the DOD, maximum-security custody facility and confines male military prisoners from all Services who have sentences that are more than 5 years. Correctional treatment and vocational training are provided to U.S. military prisoners who are confined there. Military prisoners who have been deemed extremely violent, pose a high risk of escape, or have a sentence to death are confined at the U.S. Disciplinary Barracks.

8-8. Joint regional correctional facilities located in CONUS are Level II facilities that confine and provide correctional treatment and vocational training to U.S. military prisoners who are sentenced by a court-martial to confinement of 5 years or less. These regional correctional facilities also confine U.S. military Service members who are awaiting trial. The ACC, in coordination with the local staff judge advocate, will determine the location of the Level II confinement.

8-9. The following are two Level I, U.S. Army regional correctional facilities located OCONUS:
- U.S. Army Regional Correctional Facility–Korea that is located at Camp Humphreys, Korea.
- U.S. Army Regional Correctional Facility–Europe that is located in Mannheim, Germany.

Note. These Level I correctional facilities provide pretrial confinement and short-term posttrial corrections operations. Level I correctional facilities may confine prisoners for up to 1 year.

DEATH PENALTY SENTENCES

8-10. The Provost Marshal General is responsible for establishing policies and procedures for carrying out death penalty sentences imposed by general courts-martial or military tribunals, per UCMJ and the Manual for Courts-Martial. Additional details of responsibilities and procedures are established in AR 190-55.

MILITARY AND CIVILIAN CORRECTIONS COLLABORATION

8-11. The professional collaboration between the U.S. Army and the American Correctional Association dates back to 1870 when Major Thomas A. Barr attended the first conference of the National Prison Association. The first American Correctional Association-accredited military prison was the U.S.

Disciplinary Barracks in 1982. The Military Corrections Committee, which provides interface with the American Correctional Association to promote and foster understanding of the Military Corrections Program, has been active ever since and remains important to today's corrections mission. Mirroring the fiscal challenges of federal and state correctional systems, the ACC is seeking to build further efficiencies in the military correctional system. This collaboration becomes even more critical with the transfer of military prisoners to the federal prison system. Military corrections procedures apply the American Correctional Association standards for training and procedural applications within correctional institutions.

8-12. Accreditation by the American Correctional Association provides commanders with a tool for maintaining their facilities according to nationally recognized standards for sound correctional practice and a mechanism for evaluating compliance with those standards. Correctional accreditation is valid for a 3-year period during which the standards addressing administration and management, training, physical plant, institutional operations, institutional services, and inmate programs are continually reviewed, evaluated, and modified to remain timely, legally relevant, and applicable to current correctional practices. The American Correctional Association also has a correctional certification program designed to ensure that leaders at all levels maintain their individual standards of technical excellence. Army Corrections System facility commanders also coordinate with U.S. probation officers working for the U.S. Parole Commission for community supervision of prisoners released on parole and mandatory supervised release.

JOINT CORRECTIONS COLLABORATION

8-13. Army corrections leaders must coordinate corrections across the joint family to ensure the consistency of corrections procedures. There are numerous military departments, including the—

- Consolidated Naval Brigs at Miramar, California; Chesapeake, Virginia; and Charleston, South Carolina.
- Marine Pretrial Confinement Facilities at Camp Pendleton, California and Camp Lejeune, North Carolina.
- Army regional correctional facilities and the wide array of smaller, short-term confinement facilities from all the military branches. As with all other aspects of Army operations, the ACC strives to be joint interdependent, applying the strengths of each of the Services in conjunction with ACC strengths and capabilities to provide the best possible corrections solutions.

SUPPORT TO UNIFIED LAND OPERATIONS

8-14. Corrections skills and knowledge are honed through training and the operations of correctional facilities in support of bases and base camps supporting the U.S. military. These skills and knowledge directly support requirements generated to support unified land operations. International law and recognized standards for care and treatment of U.S. military prisoners and detainees demand the skill sets and knowledge resident in military police corrections and detention specialists.

DETENTION OPERATIONS STAFF PLANNERS

8-15. Military occupational specialty 31E personnel are trained at USAMPS and are deployable worldwide in support of detention operations. The ACC and USAMPS are capable of providing technical oversight and reachback support to detention staff planners. Recent organizational design updates, based on lessons learned from global conflicts, now assign corrections and detention specialists to tactical and operational staffs from the BCT to the corps levels. They are assigned in the BCT, MEB, military police brigade, and division and corps staff designs. Corrections and detention specialists provide correctional and detention advice to their respective commanders. They also provide the operational and sustainment planning expertise for detention operations and ensure that detainee and U.S. military prisoner planning is adequate throughout the area of operations, and specifically, within their command area of operations.

DETENTION OPERATIONS UNITS

8-16. Detention units are organized at the battalion and company levels. Detention operations planners incorporate the number of companies required based on estimates of capture rates. Military police detention battalion headquarters are then assigned with the capability to provide mission command of two to five

detention (or other military police) companies. Depending on the size of the area of operations, a military police command commander may serve as the commander of detainee operations or those functions may be performed by a military police brigade commander in a smaller area of operations.

BATTLEFIELD CONFINEMENT OF U.S. MILITARY PRISONERS

8-17. The field confinement facility (FCF) and the field detention facility (FDF) are an integral part of the U.S. military justice system that commanders use to help maintain discipline, law, and order. The FCF and the FDF provide a uniform system for incarcerating and providing correctional services for those who have failed to adhere to the legally established rules of discipline. When conducting confinement operations for U.S. military prisoners, units—

- Foster a safe and secure environment while maintaining custody and control.
- Prepare prisoners for release, whether returning to duty or to a civilian status.
- Provide administrative services and limited counseling support.
- Ensure that prisoners are provided adequate access to the courts.
- Transfer U.S. military prisoners to Army Corrections System facilities as required.

Planning Process for U.S. Military Prisoners

8-18. Military police plan U.S. military prisoner operations to meet the needs of the combatant commander. The commander may decide to establish U.S. military prisoner facilities within the theater if the—

- Projected or actual number of U.S. military prisoners exceeds the unit-handling capability and has the potential of interfering with the pace of military operations.
- Distance from the theater to confinement facilities OCONUS/CONUS is too great, making the evacuation of prisoners impractical.
- Necessary transportation assets are not available to quickly evacuate U.S. military prisoners to other confinement facilities.
- Length of military operations and the maturity of the theater enable the establishment of confinement facilities within the theater.
- Establishment of a confinement facility does not interfere with the commander's ability to meet other operational needs.

8-19. The appropriate echelon provost marshal assumes an important role in keeping the combatant commander informed throughout the planning of U.S. military prisoner operations. The provost marshal coordinates closely with the Staff Judge Advocate, civil affairs, host nation authorities; appropriate echelon coordinating staff (such as the assistant chief of staff, personnel [G-1] and G-2); and major subordinate commands before recommending or establishing U.S. military prisoner confinement facilities within the theater of operations. During the planning process, the provost marshal determines the—

- Availability of confinement facilities.
- Location of an FCF in the theater.
- Availability of resources and sustainment support needed to construct and operate the confinement facility.
- Availability of adequate and technically appropriate military police forces (detention operations augmentation or selective task organization may be required).
- Classification and type of prisoner to be interned (pretrial, posttrial, and/or inter-Service).
- Requirements for prisoner evacuation.
- Requirements of supported forces.
- Requirements that may impact the overall U.S. military prisoner operation.
- Battlefield confinement of U.S. military prisoners.

Battlefield Facilities

8-20. When the combatant commander makes the decision to retain U.S. military prisoners in the theater, FDFs are possible as low as the BCT level, while an FCF is typically established at the theater level and is responsible for longer-term confinement before the evacuation of U.S. military prisoner from theater. The evacuation of U.S. military prisoners from an FDF to an FCF or from an FCF to a permanent facility is completed according to established guidelines and available facilities.

Field Detention Facility

8-21. Military police use FDFs to detain prisoners placed in custody for a short term. FDFs are used to hold prisoners in custody only until they can be tried and sentenced to confinement and evacuated from the immediate area. When possible, prisoners awaiting trial remain in their units and not at an FDF. Only when the legal requirements of Rules for Courts-Martial 305k. Prisoners will be placed in pretrial confinement and retained by military police. Rules for Courts-Martial 305k requires probable cause belief that a court-martial offense has been committed, that the prisoner committed it, and that a more severe form of restraint is necessary to ensure that the prisoner will appear at pretrial proceedings or the trial or to prevent serious criminal misconduct. Provost marshals are responsible for the location, setup, and operation of FDFs.

8-22. When operating an FDF, military police sign for each prisoner using DD Form 2707 *(Confinement Order)* and sign for each prisoner's property using DA Form 4137 *(Evidence Property/Custody Document)*. Policies and procedures on the care and treatment of prisoners and the safeguarding of a prisoners' personal effects apply to FDFs and FCFs. If preexisting structures are available, use them as FDFs. If tents are used, they should not be smaller than the medium, general-purpose tent. Probable equipment and supplies required for the establishment of an FDF include, but are not limited to—

- Barbed wire (roll and concertina).
- Fence posts.
- Gates and doors.
- Floodlights and spotlights.
- Generators.
- Food service and cleaning equipment.
- Water cans and/or lister bags.
- First aid supplies and equipment.
- Clothing and bedding.

Field Confinement Facility

8-23. Military police may be required to establish an FCF in the theater to detain prisoners placed in custody for a short term (pretrial, posttrial, or until transferred to another facility outside the theater). The DD Form 2707 (on which the prisoner was signed for) and the DA Form 4137 (on which the prisoner's property was signed for) also accompany the prisoner. The FCF may be a semipermanent or permanent facility that is better equipped and resourced than an FDF. The respective unit commander and staff use the military decisionmaking process to determine the specific tasks that must be performed to accomplish the mission. Some of these tasks include—

- Selecting a facility location and constructing the facility.
- Determining processing, classification, and identification requirements.
- Providing clothing and meals.
- Providing medical care and sanitation facilities.
- Exercising discipline, control, and administration.
- Conducting emergency planning and investigations.
- Enforcing rules of interaction and use of force.
- Providing transportation.
- Overseeing the transfer and disposition of U.S. military prisoners.

8-24. The location of the FCF depends on several factors—sustainment assets (availability of transportation, medical treatment facilities), terrain and preexisting structures, enemy situation, existing lines of communication, battlefield layout, and the mission variables. The provost marshal must coordinate with engineers, the Staff Judge Advocate, host nation authorities, and coordinating staff before a site is selected. The FCF should be located away from perimeter fences, public thoroughfares, gates, headquarters, troop areas, dense cover, and wooded areas.

8-25. The construction of the FCF depends on the availability of existing structures, work force, and material. Preexisting facilities are used to the maximum extent possible. If preexisting facilities are not available, the provost marshal will coordinate with the engineer coordinator for the construction of a facility based on existing designs in the Theater Construction Management System database.

Processing, Classifying, and Identifying

8-26. Processing, classifying, and identifying U.S. military prisoners are critical when operating a confinement facility. Accurate documentation allows the classification and identification process to run smoothly.

Processing

8-27. Each time the control of a U.S. military prisoner is transferred, the receiving organization acknowledges receipt of the prisoner and his property using DA Form 4137.

8-28. Prisoners begin their confinement by inprocessing into the FCF. Inprocessing is typically conducted by a military police detention company, prisoner operations section. Part of the inprocessing procedure is to assist the prisoner integration into the confinement environment. Newly confined prisoners are processed according to guidelines to ensure that—

- DD Form 2707 is accurate.
- Property is searched and segregated (authorized and unauthorized).
- Prisoners are strip-searched.
- Prisoners are issued the appropriate health and comfort supplies and complete a DD Form 504 *(Request and Receipt for Health and Comfort Supplies)*.
- Prisoners are photographed and fingerprinted.
- All documentation is complete. If available, use the Army Corrections Information System Centralized Operations Police Suite. (See AR 190-47.)
- Prisoners are informed of mail and visitation rights.

8-29. A medical officer examines each prisoner within 24 hours of confinement and completes DD Form 503 *(Health Assessment Certificate for Segregation)*. Newly confined prisoners are segregated from other prisoners while they undergo initial processing. Tattoos, scars, and identifying marks are noted on DD Form 2710 *(Prisoner Background Summary)*. The prisoner's personal property (such as clothing, money, official papers, and documents) is examined.

8-30. Newly confined prisoners complete training that is designed to explain facility rules and regulations, counseling procedures, UCMJ disciplinary authority and procedures, and work assignment procedures as soon as possible. The rights of prisoners and the procedures governing the presentation of complaints and grievances according to AR 20-1 are fully and clearly explained. Pretrial prisoners are carefully instructed as to their status, rights, and privileges. They participate in the correctional orientation or treatment program phases that are, determined necessary by the facility commander to ensure custody and control, employment, training, health, and welfare. Confined officers and noncommissioned officers do not exercise command or supervisory authority over other individuals while confined, and they comply with the same facility rules and regulations as other prisoners. They are not permitted special privileges that are normally associated with their former rank.

Classifying

8-31. U.S. military prisoners in an FCF are classified into two categories—pretrial and posttrial:

- Pretrial prisoners must be segregated from posttrial prisoners. Pretrial prisoners must be further segregated by gender and according to their status as an officer, a noncommissioned officer, or enlisted Soldier. Pretrial prisoners are individuals who are subject to trial by courts-martial and have been ordered by competent authority into pretrial confinement pending the disposition of charges.
- Posttrial prisoners are individuals who are found guilty and sentenced to confinement. Posttrial prisoners include in-transit prisoners who are evacuated to another facility and prisoners retained at the FCF during short-term sentences.

Identifying

8-32. Individual identification photographs are taken of all prisoners. The prisoner's last name, first name, and middle initial are placed on the first line of a name board, and the prisoner's social security number is placed on the second line. A prisoner registration number may be added on the third line. Two front and two profile pictures are taken of the prisoner. (Fingerprints are obtained according to AR 190-47.)

Clothing, Meals, and Dining Facilities

8-33. One of the many challenges that military police commanders and leaders face when operating a facility is ensuring that the basic treatment standards for U.S. military prisoners are met and include, but are not limited to—

- Proper clothing for all seasons and weather.
- Meals that are properly rationed and distributed.

8-34. Special security concerns are factors for dining facilities. Military police who are guarding U.S. military prisoners must always be vigilant in areas where prisoners congregate, such as a dining facility.

8-35. Prior planning is critical to establishing a good system of supply needs and demands to ensure that those requirements are fulfilled.

Clothing

8-36. Prisoners confined in an FCF wear the uniform of their respective military service. Certain items of clothing (as prescribed in AR 700-84) and other articles (as determined by the facility commander) are returned to the prisoner. Rank insignia is not worn at the place of confinement. The issue and expense of clothing supplied to prisoners, except officers, is according to AR 700-84 and Common Table of Allowance (CTA) 50-900. DA Form 3078 *(Personal Clothing Request)* is maintained for personnel with less than six months of active duty service and personnel receiving clothing on an issue-in-kind basis. Organizational clothing, within the allowances prescribed in CTA 50-900, may be provided to prisoners according to AR 710-2. Prisoner clothing, except for officers on pay status, is laundered or dry-cleaned without charge. (See AR 210-130.) (Clothing and personal property are dispositioned according to AR 190-47.)

Meals

8-37. Prisoners are provided with wholesome and sufficient food that is prepared from the Army Master Menu. They are normally supplied with the full complement of eating utensils. (The FCF commander must approve the nonissue of eating utensils. Prisoners who are in close confinement, those who have lost privileges, and those who have approved disciplinary action may be denied supplemental rations as described on the Army Master Menu.) Alternate meal control procedures may be authorized by the FCF commander or a designated representative as a means to prevent staff and prisoner injury when a prisoner may have tampered with food. These procedures require documentation on DA Form *3997 (Military Police Desk Blotter)* and the concurrence of a medical officer. Meal control procedures will not exceed 7 days.

8-38. Dining facilities may be organic to the unit that is operating the FCF or set up through appropriate contracting procedures. The FCF commander must decide the best method for feeding the prisoners based on the available dining facilities and the logistics and host nation support.

Medical Care and Sanitation

8-39. Medical personnel supporting an FCF assist in providing medical and behavioral health care, referrals, limited counseling, and social services. Medical officers, clinician nurses, or physician's assistants perform medical examinations to determine the fitness of newly confined prisoners and prisoners who have been outside military control for more than 24 hours. These examinations are completed within 24 hours of a prisoner's initial arrival or return to confinement. Examinations normally take place at the FCF. Dental services are provided, as required, for all prisoners. A medical officer, clinician nurse, or physician's assistant examines each prisoner in close confinement daily. Except in matters requiring the protection of medical information, the facility commander is provided with medical observations and recommendations concerning individual prisoner's correctional treatment requirements.

8-40. Prisoners are tested for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and screened for tuberculosis within 3 duty days of their initial confinement. The results of the HIV test and the tuberculosis screening are recorded on DD Form 503.

8-41. The medical commander or a designated representative (typically, a preventive medicine personal) performs a monthly inspection of the FCF. This inspection ensures that the operation of the FCF is consistent with accepted preventive medicine standards. The FCF commander is provided with a copy of the inspection results at the time of the inspection. (Additional medical guidance is provided in AR 190-47.)

8-42. The FCF commander must enforce high sanitation standards within the facility. Preventive medicine personnel will provide direct oversight and support to field sanitation teams as necessary.

8-43. All prisoners are required to bathe and follow basic personal-hygiene practices while in custody to prevent communicable diseases. The FCF commander must enforce high sanitation standards in FCFs where prisoners are required to share common latrines and showers.

Discipline, Control, and Administration

8-44. Developing discipline, control, and administrative procedures for military police operating confinement facilities is crucial to the success of U.S. military prisoner operations. Military police leaders ensure that appropriate procedures, consistent with U.S. laws and policies, are in place to guide and direct personnel operating those facilities. Such procedures ensure that prisoners are allowed the full range of privileges afforded to persons with their status if the consistent application of facility standards is applied.

Discipline

8-45. FCF commanders are authorized by public law and AR 190-47 to restrict the movement and actions of prisoners, take other actions required to maintain control, protect the safety and welfare of prisoners and other personnel, and ensure orderly FCF operation and administration.

> *Note.* A prisoner is considered to be in an on-duty status except for periods of mandatory sleep and meals and during reasonable periods of voluntary religious observation as determined by the facility commander and in coordination with the facility chaplain. Therefore, a prisoner who, as part of an administrative disciplinary action, has been determined undeserving of recreation time privileges may be required to perform other duties during such time. Such performance of duties is not considered a performance of extra duty. Privileges will be withheld from prisoners on an individual basis, without regard to custody requirements or grade and only as an administrative disciplinary measure authorized by AR 190-47. The attractiveness of living quarters and the type or amount of material items that may be possessed by prisoners may differ by custody grade to provide incentives for custody elevation. Prisoners are denied the privilege of rendering the military salute. Pretrial prisoners salute when they are in an appropriate Service uniform.

8-46. The only authorized forms of administrative disciplinary action and punishment administered to military prisoners are described in AR 190-47 and the UCMJ. Procedures, rules, regulations, living conditions, and similar factors affecting discipline are constantly reviewed to determine disciplinary action. Physical or mental punishments are strictly prohibited. Authorized administrative disciplinary actions include—

- Written or oral reprimand or warning.
- Deprivation of one or more privileges. Visits may be denied or restricted as a disciplinary action only when the offense involves violations of visitation privileges. Restrictions on mail will not be imposed as a disciplinary measure.
- Extra duty on work projects that may not exceed 2 hours per day for 14 consecutive days. Extra duty will not conflict with regular meals, sleeping hours, or attendance at regularly scheduled religious services.
- Reduction of custody grade.
- Disciplinary segregation that does not exceed 60 consecutive days. Prisoners are told why they are being placed in segregation and that they will be released when the segregation has served its intended purpose. Segregated prisoners receive the same diet as prisoners who are not segregated. Nonessential items, such as soft drinks and candy, in addition to the diet stipulated by the Army Master Menu are not provided.
- Forfeiture of all or part of earned military good conduct time or extra good conduct time according to AR 633-30 and DOD 1325.7. A forfeiture of good conduct time need not be specified as to whether it is from good conduct time or extra good conduct time.

8-47. The FCF commander is authorized to administer punishment; he may delegate this authority to a subordinate officer (captain or above) for minor punishments. The first field grade commander in the chain of command imposes major punishment when delegated authority by the first general officer in the chain of command. Prohibited punitive measures include, but are not limited to—

- Clipping a prisoner's hair excessively close.
- Instituting the lockstep.
- Requiring silence at meals.
- Having prisoners break rocks.
- Using restraining straps and jackets, shackles, or hand or leg irons as punishment.
- Removing a prisoner's underclothing or clothing and instituting other debasing practices.
- Flogging, branding, tattooing, or any other cruel or unusual punishment.
- Requiring strenuous physical activity or requiring a prisoner to hold a body position designed to place undue stress on the body.
- Using hand or leg irons, belly chains, or similar means to create or give the appearance of a chain gang.

8-48. Prohibited security measures include, but are not limited to—

- Employing chemicals to subdue or incapacitate prisoners (except riot control agents).
- Employing machine guns, rifles, or automatic weapons at guard towers, except as a means to protect the FCF from enemy or hostile fire. Selected marksmen, equipped with rifles, may be used as part of a disorder plan when specifically authorized by the higher echelon commander (other than the FCF commander).
- Using electrically charged fencing.
- Securing a prisoner to a fixed object. This is prohibited except in emergencies or when specifically approved by the facility commander to prevent potential danger to FCF staff and/or the outside community. Medical authorities should be consulted to assess the health risk to prisoners.
- Using MWDs to guard prisoners.

Note. The FCF commander must follow additional guidance and procedures for disciplinary measures as outlined in AR 190-47.

Control

8-49. The FCF commander follows the custody and control guidelines outlined in AR 190-47. The facility commander or a designated representative conducts physical counts of prisoners each day. The report rendered by the inspecting officer includes verification of DD Form 506 *(Daily Strength Record of Prisoners).* Physical counts will, at a minimum, include—

● Roll call or a similarly accurate accounting method at morning, noon, and evening formations.
● Head count immediately on the return of prisoners from work details.
● Bed checks between 2300 and 2400 and between 2400 and 0600.

8-50. The appropriate degree of custodial supervision for individual prisoners is based on a review of all available records that pertain to each prisoner, including DD Form 2713 *(Prisoner Observation Report),* DD Form 2714 *(Prisoner Disciplinary Report/Action),* Department of Defense Instruction (DODI) 1325.7, and the recommendations of corrections supervisors and professional services support personnel. Prisoners are not assigned to a permanent custody grade based solely on the offenses for which they were confined. Classification is to the minimum custody grade necessary and is consistent with sound security requirements and DODI 1325.7. Custody grades include trustee and minimum, medium, and maximum security. FCF commanders may subdivide these custody grades to facilitate additional security controls.

Administration

8-51. The commander and staff of a military police detention company or battalion will typically operate an FCF. The following duties are performed in addition to the personnel and services requirements during processing:

● **Shift supervisor.** The shift supervisor keeps the FCF commander informed on matters that affect the custody, control, and security of the FCF. The FCF commander must select a shift supervisor who has direct supervision over correctional and custodial personnel within the FCF. Shift supervisors ensure that rules, regulations, and standing operating procedures (SOPs) are followed and enforced. They directly supervise facility guards and are responsible for prisoner activities. They monitor custody and control and security measures, ensure compliance with the scheduled calls, initiate emergency control measures, and are responsible for the DA Form 3997. Supervisory personnel assigned to the FCF may also perform these duties.
● **Facility guards.** Facility guards work for the shift supervisor and are responsible for the custody, control, and discipline of prisoners under their supervision. They supervise activities according to the schedule of calls and supervise the execution of emergency action plans. They conduct periodic inspections, searches, head counts, roll calls, and bed checks. Table 8-1 depicts the duties that facility guards must perform.

Table 8-1. Facility guards duties and actions

Duties	Actions
Close confinement	Close-confinement Soldiers maintain custody and control of prisoners who are segregated from the general population due to inprocessing, administrative reasons, or disciplinary reasons. They ensure that activities are accomplished within the schedule of calls applicable to the close-confinement area. When DD Form 509 *(Inspection Record of Prisoner's in Segregation)* is required, close-confinement Soldiers are responsible for ensuring that 30-minute checks are conducted. Special-status prisoners are checked every 15 minutes. Prisoners considered suicide risks are observed continuously. Guards ensure that all required signatures for DD Form 509 are obtained on a daily basis.
Dining facility	Dining facility Soldiers are responsible for the custody and control of prisoners during mealtimes. They ensure that the dining facility traffic plan is followed to prevent prisoner congestion in high-traffic areas. Silverware is counted before and after the meal. Prisoners are searched before leaving the dining facility.

Table 8-1. Facility guards duties and actions (continued)

Duties	Actions
Detail	Detail supervisors maintain custody, control, and supervision of prisoners while on assigned details. They ensure that work is completed and that safety precautions are observed. They maintain strict accountability of equipment and tools. Detail supervisors assist with frisking and/or strip-searching prisoners who are returning from details. They account for prisoners on details according to the schedule of calls. They track the prisoners' locations at all times while they are on a detail.
Prisoner escorts	Prisoner escorts provide custody and control while moving prisoners to and from designated places. If required and authorized by the facility commander, each may be armed with a pistol. If available, a guard company may perform these duties. If armed, escorts will be qualified with a pistol and trained in the UOF, ROE, and firearms safety procedures for transporting prisoners by land, air, and sea.
Main gate and/or sally port	Soldiers assigned to the main gate and/or sally port ensure that only authorized persons enter the FCF, provide custody and control of prisoners, and inspect vehicles entering and leaving the FCF. They provide security by inspecting packages, conducting inventories of items entering and exiting the facility, and requiring noncustodial personnel to register on sign-in logs. If available a guard company may perform these duties.
Visitor room	Visitor room Soldiers are responsible for the custody and control of prisoners during visits authorized by the FCF commander. They are to detect violations of rules and regulations, improper behavior, and contraband delivery. They position themselves in an inconspicuous place and observe the conversations rather than listen to them. Any identified infractions are reported to the shift supervisor and may be grounds for termination of the visit.
Medical treatment facility	Health care personnel provide custody and control while escorting prisoners to and from medical appointments and during specified hospitalization within the medical treatment facility. They ensure that rooms are clear of contraband and prevent unauthorized communications with other individuals. For those detainees evacuated through channels, the echelon commander or supporting military police commander must provide guards/escorts as health care personnel cannot perform guard duties.
Tower watch	Soldiers assigned to duty in towers provide custody and control by observing specific sectors of the perimeter. The Soldiers are briefed on the UOF and are qualified with a 12-gauge shotgun and/or their assigned weapon. The ensure that contraband is not passed through the fence and provide protection for Soldiers in the compound/enclosure.

Note. The facility commander may adjust the number and types of guards based on available personnel.

Legend:
DD   Department of Defense
FCF   field confinement facility
ROE   rules of engagement
UOF   use of force

8-52. The FCF commander must maintain a number of records and reports to facilitate administrative operations. The FCF commander ensures that a complete and current set of regulations governing corrections and confinement facilities is available. These regulations include, but are not limited to—

- AR 15-130.
- AR 190-14.
- AR 190-47.
- AR 633-30.
- DODI 1325.7-M.
- DODI 7000.14-R.

- MCM.
- UCMJ.

8-53. A correctional treatment file is established within the first 72 hours of initial confinement and maintained throughout a prisoner's confinement period. If a prisoner is transferred, this file accompanies the prisoner to the next facility. AR 190-47 establishes the minimal requirements for the correctional treatment file.

8-54. The FCF commander may have to consider sentence computations if the theater commander determines that certain sentences will be served within the theater. This decision is based on the type of operation and its projected duration. Sentence computation is conducted according to AR 633-30 and DODI 1325.7-M. The FCF commander ensures that the personnel services noncommissioned officer working in the personnel staff officer is properly trained to do sentence computations. Incorrect computations will result in incorrect release dates and can violate a prisoner's legal rights. The rate of earnings for good conduct time is calculated based on the prisoner's length of confinement, to include any pretrial time. Mail and Correspondence

8-55. The FCF staff records the inspection of each prisoner's mail, correspondence, and authorized correspondents on DD Form 499 *(Prisoner's Mail and Correspondence Record).* The mail and correspondence guidance outlined in AR 190-47 applies to the battlefield confinement of U.S. military prisoners.

Prisoner Personal Property and Funds

8-56. Prisoners in the FCF are allowed to place personal property that the FCF commander has not authorized it for personal retention in safekeeping. Prisoner personal property and funds guidance outlined in AR 190-47 applies to the battlefield confinement of U.S. military prisoners.

Support Personnel

8-57. Support personnel organic to the unit operating the FCF are tasked with providing support to the FCF. Special personnel (medical officer, chaplain, social service worker), may also be available to assist with the administration of the facility. Support personnel assigned to an FCF are oriented and trained in the procedures of custody and control. A formal training program is established that may include, but is not limited to—

- Supervisory and interpersonal communication skills.
- Self-defense techniques.
- Use of force.
- Weapons qualifications. (See DA Pamphlet 350-38.)
- First aid.
- Emergency plans.
- FCF regulations.
- Riot control techniques.

Supply Services

8-58. Supply functions for units operating the FCF are the same as in other military operations. However, more emphasis is placed on security measures and accountability procedures that are necessary to prevent certain supplies and equipment from falling into the hands of prisoners.

8-59. Weapons, ammunition, and emergency equipment (such as hand and leg irons) must be stored in maximum-security, locked racks and cabinets. These racks and cabinets are then placed in a room that is located away from prisoner areas.

8-60. The unit logistics officer ensures that a sufficient amount of general-use and janitorial items are available to keep the FCF sanitary and free of potential diseases. General-use items include mops, buckets, brooms, toiletries, and office supplies. These items are issued under strict control procedures and on an as-needed basis to prisoners and staff. Health and comfort items are issued to new prisoners during the

initial processing and regularly thereafter. Prisoners request additional supplies using DD Form 504. Prisoners in a nonpay status receive these items free of charge. Basic health and comfort supplies include, but are not limited to, safety razors, bath soap, toothbrushes, toothpaste, and shoe polish.

8-61. Physical inventories are conducted at least monthly to reconcile and balance the records of the previous inventory, supplies received, and supplies issued to prisoners. The FCF commander or a designated representative verifies the inventory in writing.

EMERGENCY PLANNING AND INVESTIGATIONS

8-62. The FCF commander publishes formal plans for apprehending escaped prisoners, protecting and preventing fires, evacuating the FCF (in CBRN and regular scenarios), quelling prisoner riots and disorders, evacuating mass casualties, quarantining U.S. military prisoners, and conducting special-confinement and U.S. military prisoner processing operations. These plans must form part of the unit SOP and be tailored to the physical environment where the FCF is located. Emergency action plans are tested at least every six months. Evacuation drills (such as fire drills) are conducted monthly. All tests of the emergency action plans in the FCF are recorded on DA Form 3997. (See DODI 6055.6 and FM 5-415.) The essential elements of these plans include—

- Providing notification by alarm and confirming the nature of the situation.
- Providing procedures for manning critical locations on the exterior of the FCF (control points, escape routes, observation points, defensive positions).
- Providing procedures to secure the prisoner population during the execution of emergency action plans.
- Instituting prisoner and cadre recall procedures and developing a means of organizing forces (for example, search parties and riot control teams).
- Implementing procedures to terminate the emergency action plan and conducting follow-up actions (submitting reports, conducting an investigation).
- Providing procedures for evacuating mass casualties and securing prisoners.

8-63. The FCF commander is responsible for organizing a reaction force that is trained in the use of force, riot control formations, and other emergency actions. The size of the reaction force depends on available personnel assets and the nature of the emergency.

8-64. Where appropriate or legally required, incidents of misconduct, breaches of discipline, or violations of the UCMJ are investigated using the procedures established in AR 15-6. Before prisoners suspected or accused of violations are interviewed; advised of their rights against self-incrimination under Article 31, UCMJ; and told that any statement they make may be used as evidence against them in a criminal trial or in a disciplinary and adjustment board proceeding, they are told that they have the right to counsel and to have counsel present during questioning. Requests to consult with counsel will not automatically result in the case being referred to a three-member board. If requested, arrangements are made for the prisoner to meet with an attorney as soon as practical. Relevant witnesses, including those identified by U.S. military prisoners, are interviewed as deemed appropriate by the investigator. Written, sworn statements are obtained when possible. The investigation is completed expeditiously, and a disciplinary report is submitted to the FCF commander or a designated representative.

8-65. Upon receipt of the disciplinary and adjustment board report, the senior board member takes action to reduce the report to a memorandum for record, refers the case for counseling and/or reprimand, or takes other appropriate action. (Refer to AR 190-47 for further guidance on a disciplinary and adjustment board.)

RULES OF INTERACTION

8-66. The FCF commander must establish and enforce the rules of interaction that allow for the humane treatment and care of prisoners, regardless of the reason they are confined rules of interaction include (but are not limited to)—

- Do be professional and serving as positive role models for prisoners.
- Do be firm, impartial, and decisive.

- Do refrain from being too familiar or too belligerent with prisoners.
- Do not become emotionally or personally involved with prisoners.
- Do not gamble, fraternize, or engage in any commercial activities with prisoners.
- Do not play favorites with any prisoners.
- Do not give gifts to prisoners or accepting gifts from them.

USE OF FORCE

8-67. Guidelines on the use of force are incorporated into orders, plans, SOPs, and instructions at FDFs and FCFs. In all circumstances, the minimum amount of force necessary is employed. The use of firearms or other means of deadly force is justified only under conditions of extreme necessity and as a last resort. No one will use physical force against a prisoner, except as necessary to defend themselves, prevent an escape, prevent injury to persons, prevent property damage, quell a disturbance, move an unruly prisoner, or as otherwise authorized in AR 190-47.

8-68. In the event of an imminent group or mass breakout from the FCF or another general disorder, it should be made clear to prisoners that order will be restored, by force if necessary. If the situation permits, a qualified senior noncommissioned officer or the facility commander will attempt to reason with prisoners engaged in the disorder before the application of force. If reasoning fails or if the existing situation does not permit reasoning, a direct order will be given to prisoners to terminate the disorder. Before escalating beyond a show of force, prisoners not involved in the disturbance may be given an opportunity to voluntarily assemble in a controlled area away from the disturbance.

ESCAPE

8-69. Each guard is provided with a whistle or another suitable means of audible alarm. Using firearms to prevent an escape is justified only when there is no other reasonable means to prevent escape. (See AR 190-14.) In the event that a prisoner attempts to escape from the confines of the FCF, the guard takes action according to the following priorities:

- Alerts other guard personnel of the attempted escape by blowing three short blasts on a whistle or by sounding another suitable alarm signal.
- Orders the prisoner to halt three times in a loud voice.
- Fires only when the prisoner has passed all barriers of the FCF and is continuing the attempt to escape.

8-70. The location of barriers is determined by the physical arrangement of the FCF. Normally, barriers include fences or walls enclosing athletic, drill, recreational, and prisoner housing areas and administrative buildings.

8-71. The FCF commander ensures that guards are trained to use the weapons with which they are armed. All personnel are thoroughly trained on policies regarding the use of force and the provisions of AR 190-14. Tower guards and escort guards are instructed that a shotgun will not be fired at a range of less than 20 meters to prevent prisoner escapes. Such instructions will appear in prisoner guard training programs and in special instructions prepared for guard personnel.

8-72. An M9 pistol and an M16 and/or M4 rifles are used when prisoners are under escort. Machine guns and submachine guns are not used to guard U.S. military prisoners. Weapons are not taken inside controlled areas of the FCF except at the expressed direction of the FCF commander.

TRANSPORTATION

8-73. The FCF commander is responsible for prisoner transportation requirements, to include safety and security once a prisoner is under the FCF commander's direct custody. (See chapter 4 for more information on transportation considerations.) The FCF commander must ensure that the guard and escort force is thoroughly familiar with the rules for the use of force and the movement tasks outlined in STP 19-31E1-SM. The FCF commander ensures that escort guards—

- Do know the type of vehicle being used, departure time, number of prisoners and their status, the number of assigned escorts, the type of weapons that they are armed with, type of restraints used (if applicable), and transfer procedures at the final destination.
- Do know the actions to take in the event of a disorder or an escape attempt.
- Do conduct a thorough vehicle search, and ensure that items that could be used as weapons are removed or secured.
- Do not handcuff two prisoners together if both at risk for escape.
- Do not handcuff prisoners to any part of a vehicle.
- Do sign a DD Form 2708 (*Receipt for Pre-Trail/Post Trial Prisoner or Detained*) for each prisoner escorted out of the FCF and frisk the prisoners before loading them into the vehicle.
- Do follow loading procedures based on the type of transport available.
- Know emergency, loading, unloading, latrine, and meal procedures.

TRANSFER AND DISPOSITION OF U.S. MILITARY PRISONERS

8-74. The FCF commander must be prepared to transfer U.S. military prisoners from their facilities to other confinement facilities outside the theater or back to their units. Receiving units are responsible for the movement of prisoners. Prisoners are only released from confinement with proper authorization. The FCF commander coordinates with the Staff Judge Advocate and the next higher commander to determine release authority and authenticate DD Form 2718 *(Prisoner Release Order)*. (Detailed guidance on the administrative and operational processing required for prisoner transfer is outlined in AR 190-47.)

This page intentionally left blank.

Glossary

The glossary lists acronyms/abbreviations and terms with Army or joint definitions, and other selected terms. Where Army and joint definitions are different, (Army) follows the term. Terms or acronyms for which FM 3-39 is the proponent manual (the authority) are marked with an asterisk (*).

SECTION I – ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

ABCT	armor brigade combat team
ACC	U.S. Army Corrections Command
AR	Army regulation
ATTN	Attention
BCT	brigade combat team
BCT	brigade combat team
BSTB	brigade special troops battalion
CBRN	chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear
CBRNE	chemical, biological, radioloical, nuclear, and high-yield explosives
CID	criminal investigation division
CJCSM	Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff manual
CONUS	continental United States
CTA	common table of allowance
DA	Department of the Army
DD	Department of Defense
DFSC	Defense Forensic Science Center
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
DOD	Department of Defense
DODD	Department of Defense directive
DODI	Department of Defense instruction
DSCA	defense support of civil authorities
FCF	field confinement facility
FDF	field detention facility
FM	field manual
FMI	field manual, interim
G-1	assistant chief of staff, personnel
G-2	assistant chief of staff, intelligence
G-3	assistant chief of staff, operations and plans
G-4	assistant chief of staff, logistics
G-5	assistant chief of staff, civil affairs
G-7	assistant chief of staff, information operations
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
IBCT	infantry brigade combat team
J-3	Joint Staff Operations Directorate

JP	joint publication
MCRP	Marine Corps reference publication
MEB	maneuver enhancement brigade
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations
MI	military intelligence
MSCoE	Maneuver Support Center of Excellence
MWD	military working dog
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
OCONUS	outside the continental United States
OPMG	Office of the Provost Marshal General
PMESII-PT	political, military, economic, social, information, infrastructure, physical environment, and time
POL	petroleum, oil, and lubricants
POLICE	police and prison structures, organized criminal elements, legal systems, investigations and interviews, crime-conducive conditions, and enforcement gaps and mechanisms
S-2	intelligence staff officer
S-3	operations staff officer
S-4	logistics staff officer
SBCT	Stryker brigade combat team
SOP	standing operating procedure
STANAG	standardization agreement
TC	training circular
TRADOC	U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
USACIDC	U.S. Army Criminal Investigation Command
USACRC	U.S. Army Crime Records Center
USAMPS	U.S. Military Police School
USC	U.S. Code

SECTION II – TERMS

*criminal intelligence

A category of police intelligence derived from the collection, analysis, and interpretation of all available information concerning known potential criminal threats and vulnerabilities of supported organizations.

*initial response force

A unit designated by the commander to respond to threat attacks or emergency situations.

*police information

Available information concerning known and potential enemy and criminal threats and vulnerabilities collected during police activities, operations, and investigations.

*police intelligence

The application of systems, technologies, and processes that analyze applicable data and information necessary for situational understanding and focusing policing activities to achieve social order.

*traffic control post

A manned post that is used to preclude the interruption of traffic flow or movement along a designated route.

*U.S. military prisoner

A person sentenced to confinement or death during a court-martial and ordered into confinement by a competent authority, whether or not the convening authority has approved the sentence.

This page intentionally left blank.

References

Field manuals and selected joint publications are listed by new number followed by old number.

REQUIRED PUBLICATIONS

These documents must be available to intended users of this publication.

ARMY PUBLICATIONS

ADP 3-0 (FM 3-0). *Unified Land Operations.* 10 October 2011.

ADP 3-05. *Special Operations.* 31 August 2012.

ADP 3-28. *Defense Support to Civil Authorities.* 26 July 2012.

ADP 3-37. *Protection.* 31 August 2012.

ADP 5-0. *The Operations Process.* 17 May 2012.

ADP 6-0. *Mission Command.* 17 May 2012.

ADRP 1-02. *Operational Terms and Military Symbols.* 31 August 2012.

ADRP 2-0. *Intelligence.* 31 August 2012.

ADRP 3-0. *Unified Land Operations.* 16 May 2012.

ADRP 3-05. Special Operations. 31 August 2012.

ADRP 3-07. *Stability.* 31 August 2012.

ADRP 3-28, *Defense Support of Civil Authorities.* 14 June 2013.

ADRP 3-37. *Protection.* 31 August 2012.

ADRP 4-0. *Sustainment.* 31 July 2012.

ADRP 5-0. *The Operations Process.* 17 May 2012.

ADRP 6-0. *Mission Command.* 17 May 2012.

AR 15-130. *Army Clemency and Parole Board.* 23 October 1998.

AR 15-6. *Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards.* 2 October 2006.

AR 190-11. *Physical Security of Arms, Ammunition, and Explosives.* 15 November 2006.

AR 190-13. *The Army Physical Security Program.* 25 February 2011.

AR 190-14. *Carrying of Firearms and Use of Force for Law Enforcement and Security Duties.* 12 March 1993.

AR 190-47. *The Army Corrections System.* 15 June 2006.

AR 190-55. *U.S. Army Corrections System: Procedures for Military Executions.* 23 July 2010.

AR 190-58. *Personal Security.* 22 March 1989.

AR 195-2. *Criminal Investigation Activities.* 15 May 2009.

AR 195-6. *Department of the Army Polygraph Activities.* 29 September 1995.

AR 20-1. *Inspector General Activities and Procedures.* 29 November 2010.

AR 210-130. *Laundry and Dry Cleaning Operations.* 22 February 2005.

AR 350-1. *Army Training and Leader Development.* 18 December 2009.

AR 381-20. *The Army Counterintelligence Program.* 26 May 2010.

AR 525-13. *Antiterrorism.* 11 September 2008.

AR 633-30. *Military Sentences to Confinement.* 28 February 1989.

AR 700-84. *Issue and Sale of Personal Clothing.* 18 November 2004.

AR 710-2. *Supply Policy Below the National Level.* 28 March 2008.

ATP 3-39.35. *Protective Services.* 31 May 2013.

ATP 4-02.46, Army Health System Support to Detainee Operations. 12 April 2013.

ATTP 3-39.10, *Law and Order Operations,* 20 June 2011.

ATTP 3-39.20. *Police Intelligence Operations.* 29 July 2010.

ATTP 3-39.32. *Physical Security.* 30 August 2010.

ATTP 3-39.34, *Military Working Dogs,* 10 May 2011.

ATTP 3-90.15. *Site Exploitation Operations.* 8 July 2010.

ATTP 3-90.4/MCWP 3-17.8. *Combined Arms Mobility Operations.* 10 August 2011.

ATTP 5-0.1. *Commander and Staff Officer Guide.* 14 September 2011.

Pam 350-38. *Standards in Training Commission.* 19 November 2012.

FM 1-01. *Generating Force Support for Operations.* 2 April 2008.

FM 1-04. *Legal Support to the Operational Army.* 18 March 2013

FM 1-06. *Financial Management Operations*. 4 April 2011.

FM 2-22.3. *Human Intelligence Collector Operations*. 6 September 2006.

FM 27-10. The Law of Land Warfare. 18 July 1956.

FM 3-04.155. *Army Unmanned Aircraft System Operations.* 29 July 2009.

FM 3-05.301. *Psychological Operations Process Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures.* 30 August 2007.

FM 3-05.302. *Tactical Psychological Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures.* 28 October 2005.

FM 3-06. *Urban Operations.* 26 October 2006.

FM 3-07. Stability Operations. 6 October 2008.

FM 3-19.4. *Military Police Leaders' Handbook.* 4 March 2002.

FM 3-24. *Counterinsurgency.* 15 December 2006.

FM 3-34. *Engineer Operations*. 4 August 2011.

FM 3-34.170. *Engineer Reconnaissance.* 25 March 2008.

FM 3-34.22. *Engineer Operations – Brigade Combat Team and Below.* 11 February 2009.

FM 3-34.400. *General Engineering*. 9 December 2008.

FM 3-37.2, *Antiterrorism.* 18 February 2011.

FM 3-57. *Civil Affairs Operations.* 31 October 2011.

FM 3-90-1. *Offense and Defense Vulme 1*. 22 March 2013.

FM 3-90.31. *Maneuver Enhancement Brigade Operations.* 26 February 2009.

FM 3-90.61. *The Brigade Special Troops Battalion*. 22 December 2006.

FM 5-19. *Composite Risk Management.* 21 August 2006.

FM 5-415. Fire-Fighting Operations. 9 February 1999.

FM 7-15. *The Army Universal Task List*. 27 February 2009.

FMI 2-01.301. *Specific Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures and Applications for Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield.* 31 March 2009.

STP 19-31E1-SM. *Soldier's Manual, MOS 31E, Internment/Resettlement Specialist, Skill Level 1*. 23 October 2007.

TC 19-210. *Access Control Handbook*. 4 October 2004.

TM 3-39.31, *Armored Security Vehicle,* 20 August 2010.

JOINT PUBLICATIONS

CJCSM 3122.03C. *Joint Operation and Planning Execution System Volume II. Planning Formats and Guidance.* 17 August 2007.

JP 0-2. *Unified Action Armed Forces* . 10 July 2001.

JP 1. *Doctrine for the Armed Forces of the United States*. 14 May 2007.

JP 1-02. *Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms*. 12 April 2001.

JP 1-04. Legal Support to Military Operations. 3 September 2009.

JP 2-0. *Joint Intelligence.* 22 June 2007.

JP 3-0. *Joint Operations*. 11 August 2011.

JP 3-07.2. *Antiterrorism.* 24 November 2010.

JP 3-07.3. *Peace Operations.* 1 August 2011.

JP 3-07.4. *Joint Counterdrug Operation*. 13 June 2007.

JP 3-08. *Interorganization Coordination During Joint Operations.* 24 June 2011.

JP 3-10. *Joint Security Operations in Theater.* 3 February 2010

JP 3-16. *Multinational Operations.* 7 March 2007.

JP 3-24. Counterinsurgency Operations. 8 October 2009.

JP 3-27. *Homeland Defense*. 12 July 2007.

JP 3-28. *Civil Support.* 14 September 2007.

JP 3-30. *Command and Control for Joint Air Operations.* 12 January 2010.

JP 3-34. *Joint Engineer Operations*. 30 June 2012.

JP 3-63. *Detainee Operations.* 30 May 2008.

JP 4-0. *Joint Logistics*. 18 July 2008.

JP 4-07. *Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Common-User Logistics During Joint Operations.* 11 June 2001.

JP 4-08. *Joint Doctrine for Logistics Support of Multinational Operations.* 25 September 2002.

JP 5-0. *Joint Operation Planning.* 11 August 2011.

JP 6-0. *Joint Communications System.* 10 June 2010.

MULTI-SERVICE PUBLICATIONS

FM 1-02/MCRP 5-12A. *Operational Terms and Graphics*. 21 September 2004.

FM 3-22.40/MCWP 3-15.8/NTTP 3-07.3.2/AFTTP(I) 3-2.45. *Multi-Service Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (MTTP) for Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons (NLW).* 24 October 2007.

FM 21-10/MCRP 4-11.1D. *Field Hygiene and Sanitation*. 21 June 2000.

MISCELLANEOUS PUBLICATIONS

14 USC 95. *Special agents of the Coast Guard Investigative Service Law Enforcement Authority.*

18 USC 1385*. Use of Army and Air Force as Posse Comitatus.*

32 USC*. National Guard.*

CID Regulation 195-1. *Criminal Investigation Operational Procedures.* 12 August 1974.

CTA 50-900. *Clothing and Individual Equipment.* 20 November 2008.

DOD 1325-7. *Administration of Military Correctional Facilities and Clemency and Parole Authority.* 11 March 2013.

DODD 2310.01E. *The Department of Defense Detainee Program*. 5 September 2006.

DODD 3000.3. *Policy for Non-Lethal Weapons*. 9 July 1996.

DODD 3025.18. *Defense Support of Civil Authorities (DSCA).* 21 September 2010.

DODD 5210.56. *Use of Deadly Force and the Carrying of Firearms by DOD Personnel Engaged in Law Enforcement and Security Duties*. 1 November 2001.

DODI 1325.07-M. *DoD Sentence Computation Manual.* 27 July 2004.

DODI 6055.6. *DoD Fire and Emergency Services (F&ES) Program.* 21 December 2006.

DODI O-2000.22, *Designation and Physical Protection of DOD High Risk Personnel.* 22 January 2008.

Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act of 1986, Section 302. Available online at <http://www.epa.gov/emergencies/content/lawsregs/epcraover.htm>.

Freedom of Information Act. 1996.

Joint Capabilities Document for Joint Nonlethal Effects. February 2008. Available online at <https://www.jnlwp.com/ads.asp>.

Manual for Courts-Martial United States (2008 Edition). Available online at <http://www.jag.navy.mil/documents/mcm2008.pdf>.

Military Extraterritorial Jurisdiction Act of 2000. Available online at <http://www.justice.gov/criminal/dss/docs/07-20-2000-meja-act.pdf>.

STANAG 2085 (Ed. 4). *NATO Combined Military Police.* 24 February 1988.

STANAG 2226 (Ed. 1). *NATO Military Police Doctrine and Procedures – APP-12. 5* June 2003.

Uniform Code of Military Justice. Available online at <http://www.ucmj.us/>.

RECOMMENDED READING

These sources contain relevant supplemental information.

ARMY PUBLICATIONS

AR 190-56. *The Army Civilian Police and Security Guard Program.* 15 March 2013.

AR 600-20. *Army Command Policy.* 18 April 2008.

ATP 3-37.34. *Survivability Operations.* 28 June 2013.

ATP 4-16. *Movement Control.* 5 April 2013.

ATP 4-93. *Sustainment Brigade.* 9 August 2013.

FM 1-0. *Human Resources Support.* 6 April 2010.

FM 1-05. *Religious Support.* 5 October 2012.

FM 3-53. *Military Information Support Operations.* 4 January 2013.

AR 190-12. *Military Working Dog Program.* 11 March 2013.

FM 3-19.13. *Law Enforcement Investigations.* 10 January 2005.

FM 3-19.15. *Civil Disturbance Operations.* 18 April 2005.

FM 3-90.6. *The Brigade Combat Team.* 14 September 2010.

FM 4-25.12. *Unit Field Sanitation Team.* 25 January 2002.

JOINT PUBLICATIONS

CJCSM 3122.01A. *Joint Operation Planning and Execution System Volume I (Planning Policies and Procedures).* 29 September 2006.

JP 2-01.3. *Joint Intelligence Preparation of the Operational Environment.* 16 June 2009.

JP 2-03. *Geospatial Intelligence Support to Joint Operations.* 22 March 2007.

JP 3-02. *Amphibious Operations.* 10 August 2009.

JP 3-06. *Joint Urban Operations.* 8 November 2009.

JP 3-10. *Joint Security Operations in Theater.* 3 February 2010.

JP 3-31. *Command and Control for Joint Land Operations.* 29 June 2010.

JP 3-35. *Deployment and Redeployment Operations.* 7 May 2007.

JP 3-52. *Joint Airspace Control.* 20 May 2010.

JP 4-05. *Joint Mobilization Planning.* 22 March 2010.

MISCELLANEOUS **P**UBLICATIONS
CTA 50-909. *Field and Garrison Furnishings and Equipment.* 1 August 1993.
DODD 3000.3. *Policy for Nonlethal Weapons.* 9 July 1996.
Federal Acquisition Regulation. Available online at <https://www.acquisition.gov/far/>.
MCWP 3-34.1. *Military Police in Support of the MAGTF.* 13 October 2000.
10 USC 164. *Commanders of Combatant Commanders: Assignment; Powers and Duties.*
10 USC 401. *Humanitarian and Civic Assistance Provided in Conjunction With Military Operations.*

REFERENCED FORMS
DA Form 2028. *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms.*
DA Form 3078. *Personal Clothing Request.*
DA Form 3997. *Military Police Desk Blotter.*
DA Form 4137. *Evidence Property/Custody Document.*
DD Form 499. *Prisoner's Mail and Correspondence Record.*
DD Form 503. *Health Assessment Certificate for Segregation.*
DD Form 504. *Request and Receipt for Health and Comfort Supplies.*
DD Form 506. *Daily Strength Record of Prisoners.*
DD Form 509. *Inspection Record of Prisoners in Segregation.*
DD Form 2707. *Confinement Order.*
DD Form 2708. *Receipt for Pre-Trail/Post Trial Prisoner or Detained.*
DD Form 2710. *Prisoner Background Summary.*
DD Form 2713. *Prisoner Observation Report.*
DD Form 2714. *Prisoner Disciplinary Report/Action.*
DD Form 2718. *Prisoner Release Order.*

This page intentionally left blank.

Index

This page intentionally left blank.

By order of the Secretary of the Army:

RAYMOND T. ODIERNO
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

GERALD B. O'KEEFE
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
1319205

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number (IDN) 111046, requirements for FM 3-39.

This page intentionally left blank.